



\$27,795,000
DORMITORY AUTHORITY OF THE STATE OF NEW YORK
ST. JOSEPH'S COLLEGE
REVENUE BONDS, SERIES 2010

Dated: Date of Delivery

Due: July 1, as shown below

Payment and Security: The St. Joseph's College Revenue Bonds, Series 2010 (the "Series 2010 Bonds") are special obligations of the Dormitory Authority of the State of New York (the "Authority") payable solely from and secured by a pledge of (i) certain payments to be made under the Loan Agreement (the "Loan Agreement"), dated as of June 23, 2010, between St. Joseph's College, New York (the "College") and the Authority, and (ii) all funds and accounts (except the Arbitrage Rebate Fund) established under the Authority's St. Joseph's College Revenue Bond Resolution, adopted June 23, 2010 (the "Resolution") and the St. Joseph's College Series 2010 Resolution Authorizing Up To \$35,000,000 Series 2010 Bonds, adopted June 23, 2010 (the "Series 2010 Resolution" and, together with the Resolution, the "Resolutions").

The Loan Agreement is a general obligation of the College and requires the College to pay, in addition to the fees and expenses of the Authority and the Trustee, amounts sufficient to pay the principal, Sinking Fund Installments, if any, and Redemption Price of and interest on the Series 2010 Bonds, as such payments become due. The obligations of the College under the Loan Agreement to make such payments are secured by a pledge of tuition and fee revenue of the College in an amount equal to maximum annual debt service on the Series 2010 Bonds. At the time of delivery of the Series 2010 Bonds, a portion of the bond proceeds will be used to fund the Debt Service Reserve Fund so that the amount on deposit satisfies the Debt Service Reserve Fund Requirement.

The Series 2010 Bonds will not be a debt of the State of New York (the "State") and the State will not be liable on the Series 2010 Bonds. The Authority has no taxing power.

Description: The Series 2010 Bonds will be issued as fully registered bonds in denominations of \$5,000 or any integral multiple thereof. Interest (due January 1, 2011 and each January 1 and July 1 thereafter) will be payable by check or draft mailed to the registered owners of the Series 2010 Bonds at their addresses as shown on the registration books held by the Trustee or, at the option of a holder of at least \$1,000,000 in principal amount of Series 2010 Bonds, by wire transfer to the holder of such Series 2010 Bonds, each as of the close of business on the fifteenth day of the month next preceding an interest payment date. The principal or Redemption Price of the Series 2010 Bonds will be payable at the principal corporate trust office of U.S. Bank National Association, the Trustee and Paying Agent or, with respect to Redemption Price, at the option of a holder of at least \$1,000,000 in principal amount of Series 2010 Bonds, by wire transfer to the holder of such Series 2010 Bonds as more fully described herein.

The Series 2010 Bonds will be issued initially under a Book-Entry Only System, registered in the name of Cede & Co., as nominee for The Depository Trust Company ("DTC"). Individual purchases of beneficial interests in the Series 2010 Bonds will be made in Book-Entry form (without certificates). So long as DTC or its nominee is the registered owner of the Series 2010 Bonds, payments of the principal, Redemption Price and Purchase Price of and interest on such Series 2010 Bonds will be made directly to DTC or its nominee. Disbursement of such payments to DTC participants is the responsibility of DTC and disbursement of such payments to the beneficial owners is the responsibility of DTC participants. See "PART 3 - THE SERIES 2010 BONDS - Book-Entry Only System" herein.

Redemption or Purchase: *The Series 2010 Bonds are subject to redemption and purchase in lieu of optional redemption prior to maturity as more fully described herein.*

Tax Exemption: In the opinion of Squire, Sanders & Dempsey LLP., Bond Counsel, under existing law and assuming continuing compliance with certain covenants and the accuracy of certain representations, (i) interest on the Series 2010 Bonds is excluded from gross income for federal income tax purposes and is not an item of tax preference for purposes of the federal alternative minimum tax imposed on individuals and corporations, and (ii) interest on the Series 2010 Bonds is exempt from personal income taxes imposed by the State of New York and political subdivisions thereof, including The City of New York and the City of Yonkers. Interest on the Series 2010 Bonds may be subject to certain federal taxes imposed only on certain corporations. For a more complete discussion of the tax aspects, see "PART 10 - TAX MATTERS" herein.

\$7,485,000 Serial Bonds

Due		Interest		CUSIP	Due		Interest		CUSIP
July 1,	Amount	Rate	Yield	Number⁽¹⁾	July 1,	Amount	Rate	Yield	Number⁽¹⁾
2011	\$660,000	2.00%	1.75%	6499052C9	2016	\$750,000	3.50%	3.50%	6499052H8
2012	675,000	2.00	2.00	6499052D7	2017	775,000	3.50	3.80	6499052J4
2013	685,000	2.25	2.35	6499052E5	2018	805,000	4.00	4.00	6499052K1
2014	705,000	2.50	2.65	6499052F2	2019	835,000	4.00	4.15	6499052L9
2015	725,000	3.125	3.125	6499052G0	2020	870,000	4.125	4.33	6499052M7

\$5,090,000 5.25% Term Bonds, due July 1, 2025, to Yield 4.81%⁽²⁾ CUSIP Number 6499052N5⁽¹⁾

\$15,220,000 5.25% Term Bonds, due July 1, 2035 to Yield 5.10%⁽³⁾ CUSIP Number 6499052P0⁽¹⁾

The Series 2010 Bonds are offered when, as, and if issued and received by the Underwriter. The offer of the Series 2010 Bonds may be subject to prior sale, or withdrawn or modified at any time without notice. The offer is subject to the approval of legality by Squire, Sanders & Dempsey LLP., Bond Counsel, and to certain other conditions. Certain legal matters will be passed upon for the College by its counsel, Kelley Drye and Warren, LLP. Certain legal matters will be passed upon for the Underwriter by its counsel, Akerman Senterfitt LLP. The Authority expects to deliver the Series 2010 Bonds in definitive form in New York, New York, on or about August 11, 2010.

ROOSEVELT & CROSS, INCORPORATED

July 22, 2010

⁽¹⁾ CUSIP numbers have been assigned by an independent company not affiliated with the Authority and are included solely for the convenience of the holders of the Series 2010 Bonds. Neither the Authority nor the Underwriter is responsible for the selection or uses of the CUSIP numbers and no representation is made as to their correctness on the Series 2010 Bonds or as indicated above. CUSIP numbers are subject to being changed after the issuance of the Series 2010 Bonds as a result of various subsequent actions including, but not limited to, a refunding in whole or in part of such Series 2010 Bonds or as a result of the procurement of secondary market portfolio insurance or other similar enhancement by investors that is applicable to all or a portion of the Series 2010 Bonds.

⁽²⁾ Priced to the July 1, 2017 par call.

⁽³⁾ Priced to the July 1, 2020 par call.

No dealer, broker, salesperson or other person has been authorized by the Authority, the College or the Underwriter to give any information or to make any representations with respect to the Series 2010 Bonds, other than the information and representations contained in this Official Statement. If given or made, any such information or representations must not be relied upon as having been authorized by the Authority, the College or the Underwriter.

This Official Statement does not constitute an offer to sell or the solicitation of an offer to buy nor shall there be a sale of the Series 2010 Bonds by any person in any jurisdiction in which it is unlawful for such person to make such offer, solicitation or sale.

Certain information in this Official Statement has been supplied by the College and other sources that the Authority believes are reliable. Neither the Authority nor the Underwriter guarantees the accuracy or completeness of such information, and such information is not to be construed as a representation of the Authority or the Underwriter. The Underwriter has provided the following sentence for inclusion in this Official Statement. The Underwriter has reviewed the information in this Official Statement in accordance with, and as part of, its responsibilities to investors under the federal securities laws as applied to the facts and circumstances of this transaction, but the Underwriter does not guarantee the accuracy or completeness of such information.

The College has reviewed the parts of this Official Statement describing the College, the Mortgage, the Principal and Interest Requirements, the Project, the Estimated Sources and Uses of Funds and Appendix B. As a condition to delivery of the Series 2010 Bonds, the College will certify that as of the date of this Official Statement and of delivery of the Series 2010 Bonds, such parts do not contain any untrue statements of a material fact and do not omit to state a material fact necessary in order to make the statements made therein, in the light of the circumstances under which the statements are made, not misleading. The College makes no representation as to the accuracy or completeness of any other information included in this Official Statement.

The Underwriter has reviewed the information in the Official Statement pursuant to its responsibilities to investors under the federal securities law, but the Underwriter does not guarantee the accuracy or completeness of such information.

References in this Official Statement to the Act, the Resolution, the Series 2010 Resolution and the Loan Agreement do not purport to be complete. Refer to the Act, the Resolution, the Series 2010 Resolution and the Loan Agreement for full and complete details of their provisions. Copies of the Resolution, the Series 2010 Resolution and the Loan Agreement are on file with the Authority and the Trustee.

The order and placement of material in this Official Statement, including its appendices, are not to be deemed a determination of relevance, materiality or importance, and all material in this Official Statement, including its appendices, must be considered in its entirety.

Under no circumstances will the delivery of this Official Statement or any sale made after its delivery create any implication that the affairs of the Authority or the College have remained unchanged after the date of this Official Statement.

IN CONNECTION WITH THE OFFERING OF THE SERIES 2010 BONDS, THE UNDERWRITER MAY OVER ALLOT OR EFFECT TRANSACTIONS THAT STABILIZE OR MAINTAIN THE MARKET PRICES OF THE SERIES 2010 BONDS AT LEVELS ABOVE THOSE WHICH MIGHT OTHERWISE PREVAIL IN THE OPEN MARKET. SUCH STABILIZING, IF COMMENCED, MAY BE DISCONTINUED AT ANY TIME.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

<u>Part</u>	<u>Page</u>	<u>Part</u>	<u>Page</u>
1. INTRODUCTION	1		
Purpose of the Official Statement	1	Enrollment	22
Purpose of the Issue	1	Student Charges	23
Authorization of Issuance	1	Student Financial Aid	24
The Authority	2	Faculty	24
The College	2	ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENT INFORMATION	25
The Series 2010 Bonds	2	Operating Results	25
Payment of the Series 2010 Bonds	2	Balance Sheet	25
Security for the Series 2010 Bonds	2	LITIGATION	27
Financial Covenants	2	7. THE AUTHORITY	27
The Mortgage	2	Background, Purposes and Powers	27
The Project	3	Outstanding Indebtedness of the Authority (Other than	
2. SOURCE OF PAYMENT AND SECURITY FOR THE		Indebtedness Assumed by the Authority)	28
SERIES 2010 BONDS	3	Outstanding Indebtedness of the Agency	
Payment of the Series 2010 Bonds	3	Assumed by the Authority	29
Security for the Series 2010 Bonds	3	Governance	29
Financial Covenants	4	Claims and Litigation	33
The Mortgage	5	Other Matters	33
Events of Default and Acceleration	5	8. LEGALITY OF THE SERIES 2010 BONDS FOR	
Issuance of Additional Indebtedness	6	INVESTMENT AND DEPOSIT	34
General	6	9. NEGOTIABLE INSTRUMENTS	34
3. THE SERIES 2010 BONDS	6	10. TAX MATTERS	34
Description of the Series 2010 Bonds	6	11. STATE NOT LIABLE ON THE SERIES 2010 BONDS	36
Redemption and Purchase in Lieu of Redemption Provisions	7	12. COVENANT BY THE STATE	36
Book-Entry Only System	9	13. LEGAL MATTERS	36
Principal and Interest Requirements	12	14. UNDERWRITING	37
4. THE PROJECT	12	15. CONTINUING DISCLOSURE	37
5. ESTIMATED SOURCES AND USES OF FUNDS	13	16. RATINGS	39
6. THE COLLEGE	13	17. MISCELLANEOUS	39
GENERAL INFORMATION	13	Appendix A – Certain Definitions	A-1
Introduction	13	Appendix B – Financial Statements of St. Joseph’s College	
Governance	14	and Independent Auditors’ Report	B-1
Administration	15	Appendix C – Summary of Certain Provisions of the Loan Agreement	C-1
Facilities	16	Appendix D – Summary of Certain Provisions of the Resolution	D-1
OPERATING INFORMATION	21	Appendix E – Form of Proposed Opinion of Bond Counsel	E-1
Admissions	21		



DORMITORY AUTHORITY - STATE OF NEW YORK
PAUL T. WILLIAMS, JR. – PRESIDENT

515 BROADWAY, ALBANY, NY 12207
ALFONSO L. CARNEY, JR. – CHAIR

OFFICIAL STATEMENT RELATING TO
\$27,795,000
DORMITORY AUTHORITY OF THE STATE OF NEW YORK
ST. JOSEPH’S COLLEGE
REVENUE BONDS, SERIES 2010

PART 1 — INTRODUCTION

Purpose of the Official Statement

The purpose of this Official Statement, including the cover page and appendices, is to provide information about the Authority and St. Joseph’s College, New York (the “College”), in connection with the offering by the Authority of \$27,795,000 aggregate principal amount of its St. Joseph’s College Revenue Bonds, Series 2010 (the “Series 2010 Bonds”).

The following is a brief description of certain information concerning the Series 2010 Bonds, the Authority and the College. A more complete description of such information and additional information that may affect decisions to invest in the Series 2010 Bonds is contained throughout this Official Statement, which should be read in its entirety. Certain terms used in this Official Statement are defined in Appendix A hereto.

Purpose of the Issue

The Series 2010 Bonds are being issued for the purpose of providing funds which, together with other available moneys, will be used to (i) pay all or a portion of the Costs of the Project, (ii) make a deposit to the Debt Service Reserve Fund, and (iii) pay the Costs of Issuance of the Series 2010 Bonds. See “PART 4 THE PROJECT” and “PART 5 — ESTIMATED SOURCES AND USES OF FUNDS.”

Authorization of Issuance

The Resolution authorizes the issuance of Bonds (collectively, the “Bonds”) pursuant to separate Series Resolutions for the benefit of the College. The Series 2010 Bonds will be issued pursuant to the Act, the Resolution, and the Series 2010 Resolution. The Series 2010 Bonds are the first Series of Bonds to be issued under the Resolution. In addition to the Series 2010 Bonds, the Resolution authorizes the issuance of other Series of Bonds to pay other Costs of one or more Projects, to pay the Costs of Issuance of such Series of Bonds and to refund all or a portion of Outstanding Bonds or other notes or bonds of the Authority or indebtedness of the College. Each Series of Bonds will be separately secured from each other Series. There is no limit on the amount of additional Bonds that may be issued under the Resolution, which Bonds may be issued at any time after the scheduled delivery date of the Series 2010 Bonds. See “PART 3 — THE SERIES 2010 BONDS.”

The Authority

The Authority is a public benefit corporation of the State, created for the purpose of financing and constructing a variety of public-purpose facilities for certain educational, healthcare, governmental and not-for-profit institutions. See “PART 7 - THE AUTHORITY.”

The College

The College is an independent, coeducational, not-for-profit institution of higher education chartered by the Board of Regents of the University of the State of New York. The College has two campuses, one in Patchogue, New York (the “Long Island Campus”) and another in Brooklyn, New York (the “Brooklyn Campus”). See “PART 6 - THE COLLEGE” and “Appendix B - Financial Statements of St. Joseph’s College and Independent Auditors’ Report.”

The Series 2010 Bonds

The Series 2010 Bonds are dated their date of delivery and bear interest from such date (payable January 1, 2011 and on each January 1 and July 1 thereafter) at the rate and will mature as set forth on the cover page of this Official Statement. See “PART 3 - THE SERIES 2010 BONDS - Description of the Series 2010 Bonds.”

Payment of the Series 2010 Bonds

The Series 2010 Bonds are special obligations of the Authority payable solely from the Revenues which consist of certain payments to be made by the College under the Loan Agreement, which payments are pledged and assigned to the Trustee. See “PART 2 - SOURCE OF PAYMENT AND SECURITY FOR THE SERIES 2010 BONDS - Payment of the Series 2010 Bonds.”

Security for the Series 2010 Bonds

The Series 2010 Bonds will be secured by the pledge and assignment to the Trustee of the Revenues and the security interest in the Pledged Revenues granted by the College to the Authority under the Loan Agreement.

The Series 2010 Bonds will also be secured by the proceeds from the sale of the Series 2010 Bonds (until disbursed as provided by the Resolution) and by all funds and accounts established under the Resolution, including the Debt Service Reserve Fund (with the exception of the Arbitrage Rebate Fund). Each Series of Bonds issued under the Resolution will be separately secured from each other Series of Bonds. See “PART 2 - SOURCE OF PAYMENT AND SECURITY FOR THE SERIES 2010 BONDS - Security for the Series 2010 Bonds.”

The Series 2010 Bonds will not be a debt of the State nor will the State be liable thereon. The Authority has no taxing power. Neither the State nor the Authority has any responsibility to make payments with respect to the Series 2010 Bonds except for the Authority’s responsibility to make payments from moneys received from the College pursuant to the Loan Agreement and from amounts held in the funds and accounts established pursuant to the Series 2010 Resolution and pledged therefor.

Financial Covenants

The College has entered into certain financial covenants in the Loan Agreement, including a provision for the maintenance of debt service coverage, a provision for the maintenance of balance sheet liquidity and a covenant related to incurrence of additional debt. For a description of such covenants, see “PART 2 - SOURCE OF PAYMENT AND SECURITY FOR THE SERIES 2010 BONDS – Financial Covenants” and “Appendix C - Summary of Certain Provisions of the Loan Agreement.”

The Mortgage

The College’s obligations to the Authority under the Loan Agreement will be additionally secured by the Mortgage on the Mortgaged Property and security interests in certain fixtures, furnishings and equipment now or hereafter located therein or used in connection therewith. The Authority may, but has no present intention to, assign the Mortgage and such security interests to the Trustee. Unless the Mortgage and such security interests are assigned to the Trustee, neither the Mortgage, the security interests in such fixtures, furnishings and equipment nor any proceeds therefrom will be pledged to the Holders of the Series 2010 Bonds. Prior to any assignment of the Mortgage to the Trustee, property subject to the Mortgage may be released, and the Mortgage may be amended, with the prior written consent of the Authority, but without the consent of the Trustee or the Holders of any Series 2010

Bonds. See “PART 2 – SOURCE OF PAYMENT AND SECURITY FOR THE SERIES 2010 BONDS – the Mortgage.”

The Project

The Project consists of the construction/renovation of two projects on the Brooklyn Campus and the Long Island Campus in support of the Institution’s athletic program and a renovation on the Long Island Campus that will convert classrooms into science labs. See “PART 4 - THE PROJECT.”

PART 2 — SOURCE OF PAYMENT AND SECURITY FOR THE SERIES 2010 BONDS

Set forth below is a narrative description of certain contractual provisions relating to the source of payment of and security for the Series 2010 Bonds. These provisions have been summarized and this description does not purport to be complete. Reference should be made to the Act, the Loan Agreement, the Resolution and the Series 2010 Resolution. Copies of the Loan Agreement, the Resolution and the Series 2010 Resolution are on file with the Authority and the Trustee. See also “Appendix C — Summary of Certain Provisions of the Loan Agreement” and “Appendix D — Summary of Certain Provisions of the Resolution” for a more complete statement of the rights, duties and obligations of the parties thereto.

Payment of the Series 2010 Bonds

The Series 2010 Bonds will be special obligations of the Authority. The principal of and interest on the Series 2010 Bonds are payable solely from the Revenues. The Revenues consist of the payments required to be made by the College under the Loan Agreement (i) on account of the principal and Sinking Fund Installments of and interest on the Outstanding Series 2010 Bonds and (ii) to maintain the Debt Service Reserve Fund its requirement. The Revenues and the right to receive them have been pledged to the Trustee for the benefit of the Holders of the Series 2010 Bonds.

The Loan Agreement is a general obligation of the College and obligates the College to make payments to satisfy the principal and Sinking Fund Installments, if any, and Redemption Price of and interest on the Series 2010 Bonds. Generally, such payments are to be made monthly on the 10th day of each month. Each payment is to be equal to a proportionate share of the interest on the Series 2010 Bonds coming due on the next succeeding interest payment date and of the principal and Sinking Fund Installments coming due on the next succeeding July 1.

The Authority has directed the College, and the College has agreed, to make such payments directly to the Trustee. Such payments are to be applied by the Trustee to the payment of the principal of and interest on the Series 2010 Bonds. The payments to be made by the College to restore the Debt Service Reserve Fund to its required level are to be made directly to the Trustee for deposit to the Debt Service Reserve Fund.

Security for the Series 2010 Bonds

The Series 2010 Bonds will be secured by the payments described above to be made under the Loan Agreement, all funds and accounts established under the Resolution (with the exception of the Arbitrage Rebate Fund) and the security interest in the Pledged Revenues. Each Series of Bonds issued under the Resolution will be separately secured from each other Series of Bonds. See “Appendix D - Summary of Certain Provisions of the Resolution.”

Pledged Revenues

As security for its obligations under the Loan Agreement, the College has granted to the Authority a security interest in the Pledged Revenues, consisting of an aggregate amount of tuition and fees charged to students and received or receivable by the College equal to the maximum annual debt service in the current or any future calendar year on the then Outstanding Series 2010 Bonds. The Authority has pledged and assigned to the Trustee for the benefit of the Holders of Series 2010 Bonds its security interest in the Pledged Revenues. Pursuant to the Loan Agreement, the College has covenanted not to incur additional debt if the lien securing such debt would constitute a prior pledge in the Pledged Revenues. However, the Loan Agreement permits the College under certain conditions to incur additional indebtedness secured by collateral securing the Series 2010 Bonds on a parity basis.

Debt Service Reserve Fund

The Resolutions establish the Debt Service Reserve Fund which is to be held by the Trustee, is to be applied solely for the purposes specified in the Resolution and is pledged to secure the payment of the principal, Sinking Fund Installments and Redemption Price of and interest on the Series 2010 Bonds.

The Resolutions require that the Debt Service Reserve Fund be maintained at an amount equal to its requirement, which is the greatest amount required in the then current or any future calendar year to pay the sum of the principal and Sinking Fund Installments of and interest on Outstanding Bonds payable during such year, subject to any limitation imposed by the Code. The Debt Service Reserve Fund Requirement for the Series 2010 Bonds is initially \$2,005,037.50. See "Appendix A - Certain Definitions - Debt Service Reserve Fund Requirement."

Moneys in the Debt Service Reserve Fund are to be withdrawn and deposited in the Debt Service Fund whenever the amount in such Debt Service Fund on the fourth business day prior to an interest payment date is less than the amount which is necessary to pay the principal and Sinking Fund Installments of and interest on Outstanding Series 2010 Bonds payable on such interest payment date and the purchase price or Redemption Price of Outstanding Series 2010 Bonds theretofore contracted to be purchased or called for redemption, plus accrued interest thereon to the date of purchase or redemption. The Loan Agreement requires that the College restore the Debt Service Reserve Fund to its Requirement by paying the amount of any deficiency to the Trustee within fifteen days after receiving notice of a deficiency. Moneys in the Debt Service Reserve Fund in excess of the requirement may be withdrawn and applied in accordance with the Resolutions.

Financial Covenants

The Loan Agreement contains certain covenants of the College wherein the College agrees to the following:

Maintenance Covenants

The College covenants to charge and maintain student tuition, fees and other charges sufficient to provide a Debt Service Coverage Ratio of 1.25:1 for Fiscal Years ending in 2011 and thereafter. On or prior to each Reporting Date, the College shall file with the Authority a certificate of an Authorized Officer of the College stating whether at the immediately preceding Testing Date the Debt Service Coverage Ratio requirement is satisfied and setting forth the calculation upon which such statement is based. If on two consecutive Testing Dates the College does not satisfy the Debt Service Coverage Ratio requirement, or in the event the Debt Service Coverage Ratio falls below 1:1 on any Testing Date, the Authority may require the College to retain a Management Consultant or may accept a report provided by the College explaining the cause of the College's noncompliance with the Debt Service Coverage Ratio requirement and the steps the Colleges plans to take to bring the College back into compliance with such requirement.

Commencing with the College's Fiscal Year ending in 2011 and through Fiscal Year 2012, the College also covenants to maintain an Unrestricted Resources to Debt Ratio of at least .60:1. This requirement increases to .75:1 for Fiscal Year ending in 2013 and all subsequent Fiscal Years. On or prior to each Reporting Date, the College shall file with the Authority a certificate of an Authorized Officer of the College stating whether at the immediately preceding Testing Date the Unrestricted Resources to Debt Ratio requirement is satisfied and setting forth the calculation upon which such statement is based. If on any Testing Date the College does not satisfy the Unrestricted Resources to Debt Ratio requirement, the Authority may require the College to retain a Management Consultant or may accept a report provided by the College explaining the cause of the College's noncompliance with the Unrestricted Resources to Debt Ratio requirement and the steps the College plans to take to bring the College back into compliance with such requirement.

Additional Indebtedness

Except as otherwise described below, the College covenants that it will not issue, incur, assume or guarantee any Indebtedness without the prior written consent of the Authority.

The College may issue, incur, assume or guarantee Long-Term Indebtedness without the consent of the Authority provided that (i) it maintains a debt rating in the "Baa/BBB" category without regard for "+" or "-" or numerical notation from at least one Rating Service and (ii) (a) such Long-Term Indebtedness issued in any Fiscal Year is in an amount less than or equal to 10% of the amount of its unrestricted net assets as reported for the most recently concluded Fiscal Year for which audited financial statements are available or (b) the College provides to the Authority a certificate of an Authorized Officer of the College containing pro forma calculations demonstrating that the maintenance covenants described above would be met for the most recently concluded Fiscal Year for which

audited financial statements are available taking into account the additional Long-Term Indebtedness proposed to be issued (provided that, for purposes of calculating the Debt Service Coverage Ratio for such pro forma calculations, Annual Debt Service shall be equal to projected Maximum Annual Debt Service).

Notwithstanding the foregoing, the College may issue Non-Recourse Indebtedness without limitation provided that the property securing such Non-Recourse Indebtedness must have been acquired by the College after the issuance of the Series 2010 Bonds.

The College may also issue Refunding Debt without limitation provided that, after giving effect to such Refunding Debt, the Maximum Annual Debt Service on the College's Long-Term Indebtedness will not be greater in any Fiscal Year subsequent to the date such Refunding Debt is issued.

The College may incur Short-Term Indebtedness without limitation if, with respect to such indebtedness, during any 12-month period, there will be no outstanding balance for a period of not less than 30 days or such shorter period consented to by the Authority.

For a more complete description of the financial covenants of the College contained in the Loan Agreement, see "Appendix C - Summary of Certain Provisions of the Loan Agreement."

The Mortgage

In connection with the delivery of the Series 2010 Bonds, the College will execute and deliver a Mortgage to the Authority and grant the Authority a security interest in certain fixtures, furnishings and equipment to secure the payments required to be made by the College pursuant to the Loan Agreement. The Authority may assign its rights under the Loan Agreement and the Mortgage and related security interest to the Trustee, but has no present intention to do so. Unless the Mortgage and security interest are assigned to the Trustee, neither the Mortgage nor the security interest in such fixtures, furnishings and equipment nor any proceeds therefrom will be pledged to the Holders of the Series 2010 Bonds. Prior to any assignment of the Mortgage to the Trustee, property subject to the Mortgage may be released, and the Mortgage may be amended, with the prior written consent of the Authority but without the consent of the Trustee or the Holders of any Series 2010 Bonds.

Events of Default and Acceleration

The following are events of default under the Resolution with respect to the Series 2010 Bonds: (i) a default by the Authority in the payment of the principal, Sinking Fund Installment or Redemption Price of any Bond; (ii) a default by the Authority in the payment of interest on any Bond; (iii) a default by the Authority in the due and punctual performance of any covenant or agreement contained in the Series 2010 Resolution to comply with the provisions of the Code necessary to maintain the exclusion of interest on such Bonds from gross income for purposes of federal income taxation; (iv) a default by the Authority in the due and punctual performance of any covenants, conditions, agreements or provisions contained in the Series 2010 Bonds or in the Resolutions which continues for 30 days after written notice thereof is given to the Authority by the Trustee (such notice to be given in the Trustee's discretion or at the written request of the Holders of not less than 25% in principal amount of Outstanding Bonds) or if such default is not capable of being cured within 30 days, if the Authority fails to commence within 30 days and diligently prosecute the cure thereof; or (v) the Authority shall have notified the Trustee that an "Event of Default," as defined in the Loan Agreement, has occurred and is continuing and all sums payable by the College under the Loan Agreement have been declared immediately due and payable (unless such declaration shall have been annulled). Unless all sums payable by the College under the Loan Agreement are declared immediately due and payable, an event of default under the Loan Agreement is not an event of default under the Resolution.

The Resolution provides that, if an event of default (other than as described in clause (iii) of the preceding paragraph) occurs and continues, the Trustee may, and upon the written request of Holders of not less than 25% in principal amount of the Outstanding Series 2010 Bonds, shall declare the principal of and interest on all the Outstanding Series 2010 Bonds to be due and payable. At any time after the principal of the Series 2010 Bonds shall have been so declared to be due and payable, and before the entry of final judgment or decree in any suit, action or proceeding instituted on account of such default, or before the completion of the enforcement of any other remedy under the Resolution, the Trustee shall, with the written consent of the Holders of not less than 25% in principal amount of Series 2010 Bonds not yet due by their terms and then Outstanding, by written notice to the Authority, annul such declaration and its consequences under the terms and conditions specified in the Resolution with respect to such annulment.

The Resolution provides that the Trustee is to give notice in accordance with the Resolution of each event of default known to the Trustee to the College within five days, and to the Holders within 30 days, in each case after obtaining knowledge of the occurrence thereof, unless such default has been remedied or cured before the giving of such notice; provided, however, that, except in the case of default in the payment of principal, Sinking Fund Installments or Redemption Price of or interest on any of the Series 2010 Bonds, the Trustee will be protected in withholding such notice thereof to the Holders if the Trustee in good faith determines that the withholding of such notice is in the best interests of the Holders of the Series 2010 Bonds.

Issuance of Additional Indebtedness

In addition to the Series 2010 Bonds, the Resolution authorizes the issuance of other Series of Bonds to finance one or more projects and for other specified purposes, including to refund Outstanding Bonds or other notes or bonds of the Authority or other indebtedness of the College. Each Series of Bonds will be separately secured from each other Series of Bonds by the pledge and assignment to the Trustee of the applicable Revenues and the funds and accounts established pursuant to the applicable Series Resolution. There is no limit on the amount of additional Bonds that may be issued under the Resolution, which Bonds may be issued at any time after the scheduled delivery date of the Series 2010 Bonds.

The Loan Agreement also permits the College, under certain conditions, to incur additional long-term indebtedness secured by the collateral securing the Series 2010 Bonds on a parity with the Series 2010 Bonds.

General

The Series 2010 Bonds will not be a debt of the State and the State will not be liable on the Series 2010 Bonds. The Authority has no taxing power. The Authority has never defaulted in the timely payment of principal or interest on its bonds or notes. See “PART 7 — THE AUTHORITY.”

PART 3 — THE SERIES 2010 BONDS

Set forth below is a narrative description of certain provisions relating to the Series 2010 Bonds. These provisions have been summarized and this description does not purport to be complete. Reference should be made to the Resolution, the Series 2010 Resolution, and the Loan Agreement, copies of which are on file with the Authority and the Trustee. See also “Appendix C — Summary of Certain Provisions of the Loan Agreement” and “Appendix D — Summary of Certain Provisions of the Resolution” for a more complete description of certain provisions of the Series 2010 Bonds.

Description of the Series 2010 Bonds

The Series 2010 Bonds will be issued pursuant to the Resolution and the Series 2010 Resolution and will be dated their date of delivery and bear interest from such date (payable January 1, 2011 and on each January 1 and July 1 thereafter) at the rates set forth on the cover page of this Official Statement. The Series 2010 Bonds will be issued as fully registered bonds in denominations of \$5,000 or any integral multiple thereof.

Interest on the Series 2010 Bonds will be payable by check or draft mailed to the registered owners or, at the option of the registered owner of at least \$1,000,000 of Series 2010 Bonds, by wire transfer to the wire transfer address within the continental United States to which the registered owner has instructed the Trustee to make such payment at least five Business Days prior to the Record Date for such Series 2010 Bonds immediately preceding the interest payment date. If the Series 2010 Bonds are not registered in the name of DTC or its nominee, Cede & Co., the principal and Redemption Price of the Series 2010 Bonds will be payable in lawful money of the United States of America at the principal corporate trust office of U.S. Bank National Association, New York, New York, the Trustee and Paying Agent.

The Series 2010 Bonds will be registered in the name of Cede & Co., as nominee for The Depository Trust Company, New York, New York (“DTC”), pursuant to DTC’s Book-Entry Only System. Purchases of beneficial interests in the Series 2010 Bonds will be made in book-entry form, without certificates. So long as DTC or its nominee, Cede & Co., is the registered owner of the Series 2010 Bonds, payments of the principal, Purchase Price and Redemption Price of and interest on the Series 2010 Bonds will be made by the Trustee directly to Cede & Co. Disbursement of such payments to the DTC Participants (as hereinafter defined) is the responsibility of DTC and disbursement of such payments to the Beneficial Owners of the Series 2010 Bonds is the responsibility of the DTC

Participants and the Indirect Participants (as hereinafter defined). If at any time the Book-Entry Only System is discontinued for the Series 2010 Bonds, the Series 2010 Bonds will be exchangeable for fully registered Series 2010 Bonds in any authorized denominations of the same maturity without charge except the payment of any tax, fee or other governmental charge to be paid with respect to such exchange, subject to the conditions and restrictions set forth in the Resolution. See “ - Book-Entry Only System” below and “Appendix D - Summary of Certain Provisions of the Resolution.”

For a more complete description of the Series 2010 Bonds, see “Appendix D - Summary of Certain Provisions of the Resolution.”

Redemption and Purchase in Lieu of Redemption Provisions

The Series 2010 Bonds are subject to redemption and to purchase in lieu of optional redemption, as described below. For additional description of the redemption and other provisions relating to the Series 2010 Bonds, see “Appendix D—Summary of Certain Provisions of the Resolution.”

Optional Redemption

The Series 2010 Bonds maturing on or before July 1, 2020 are not subject to optional redemption prior to maturity.

Series 2010 Bonds Maturing July 1, 2025

The Series 2010 Bonds maturing on July 1, 2025 are subject to redemption prior to maturity at the option of the Authority on or after July 1, 2017, in whole or in part at any time, at a Redemption Price equal to 100% of the principal amount of the Series 2010 Bonds to be redeemed, plus accrued interest to the redemption date.

Series 2010 Bonds Maturing July 1, 2035

The Series 2010 Bonds maturing on July 1, 2035 are subject to redemption prior to maturity at the option of the Authority on or after July 1, 2020, in whole or in part at any time, at a Redemption Price equal to 100% of the principal amount of the Series 2010 Bonds to be redeemed, plus accrued interest to the redemption date.

Purchase in Lieu of Optional Redemption

Series 2010 Bonds Maturing July 1, 2025

The Series 2010 Bonds maturing on July 1, 2025 are also subject to purchase in lieu of optional redemption prior to maturity at the option of the College with the consent of the Authority, on or after July 1, 2017, in whole or in part at any time, at a purchase price equal to 100% of the principal amount of the Series 2010 Bonds to be purchased, plus accrued interest (the “Purchase Price”) to the date set for purchase (the “Purchase Date”).

Series 2010 Bonds Maturing July 1, 2035

The Series 2010 Bonds maturing on July 1, 2035 are also subject to purchase in lieu of optional redemption prior to maturity at the option of the College with the consent of the Authority, on or after July 1, 2020, in whole or in part at any time, at the Purchase Price to the Purchase Date.

Mandatory Redemption

The Series 2010 Bonds are subject to redemption, in part, through application of Sinking Fund Installments upon notice given as prescribed in the Resolution, at a Redemption Price equal to 100% of the principal amount of Series 2010 Bond to be redeemed, plus accrued interest to the date of redemption. Unless none of the Series 2010 Bonds of a maturity to be so redeemed are then Outstanding and, subject to the provisions of the Series 2010 Resolution permitting amounts to be credited to part or all of any one or more Sinking Fund Installments, there shall be due and the Authority shall be required to pay for the retirement of the Series 2010 Bonds maturing on July 1 of each of the years set forth in the following table, the amount set forth opposite such year:

<u>Series 2010 Bonds</u> <u>Maturing July 1, 2025</u>		<u>Series 2010 Bonds</u> <u>Maturing July 1, 2035</u>	
2021	\$ 915,000	2026	\$1,190,000
2022	965,000	2027	1,250,000
2023	1,015,000	2028	1,320,000
2024	1,070,000	2029	1,390,000
2025 [†]	1,125,000	2030	1,465,000
		2031	1,545,000
		2032	1,630,000
		2033	1,715,000
		2034	1,810,000
		2035 [†]	1,905,000

[†] Final maturity.

There will be credited against and in satisfaction of the Sinking Fund Installment payable on any date, the principal amount of Series 2010 Bonds entitled to such Sinking Fund Installment (A) purchased with moneys in the Debt Service Fund pursuant to the Resolution, (B) redeemed at the option of the Authority, (C) purchased by the College or the Authority and delivered to the Trustee for cancellation or (D) deemed to have been paid in accordance with the Resolution. Series 2010 Bonds purchased with moneys in the Debt Service Fund will be applied against and in fulfillment of the Sinking Fund Installment of the Series 2010 Bonds so purchased payable on the next succeeding July 1. Series 2010 Bonds redeemed at the option of the Authority, purchased by the Authority or the College (other than from amounts on deposit in the Debt Service Fund) and delivered to the Trustee for cancellation or deemed to have been paid in accordance with the Resolution will be applied in satisfaction, in whole or in part, of one or more Sinking Fund Installments as the Authority may direct in its discretion. To the extent the Authority's obligation to make Sinking Fund Installments in a particular year is so satisfied, the likelihood of redemption through mandatory Sinking Fund Installments of a Bondholder's Series 2010 Bonds of the maturity so purchased will be reduced for such year.

Special Redemption

The Series 2010 Bonds are subject to redemption prior to maturity at the option of the Authority in any order, as a whole or in part on any interest payment date, at a Redemption Price equal to 100% of the principal amount of Series 2010 Bonds to be redeemed, plus accrued interest to the redemption date from (i) proceeds of a condemnation or insurance award, which proceeds are not used to repair, restore or replace the Project and (ii) unexpended proceeds of the Series 2010 Bonds upon the abandonment of the Project or a portion thereof due to a legal or regulatory impediment.

Selection of Bonds to be Redeemed

In the case of redemptions of Series 2010 Bonds, the Authority will select the maturities to be redeemed. If less than all Series 2010 Bonds within a maturity are to be redeemed, as long as the Bonds are in book-entry form registered in the name of Cede & Co., as nominee of DTC, DTC will determine by lot the amount of the interest of each DTC Direct Participant in such maturity to be redeemed. If the Series 2010 Bonds are no longer in book-entry form registered in the name of Cede & Co., as nominee of DTC, the Bonds or portions thereof to be redeemed shall be selected for redemption by the Trustee, by lot, using such method of selection as the Trustee shall consider proper in its discretion.

Notice of Redemption

Generally, the Trustee is to give notice of the redemption of the Series 2010 Bonds in the name of the Authority, by first-class mail, postage prepaid, not less than 30 days nor more than 45 days prior to the redemption date to the registered owners of any Series 2010 Bonds which are to be redeemed, at their last known addresses appearing on the registration books of the Authority not more than 10 Business Days prior to the date such notice is given. Each notice of redemption, other than a notice of “Special Redemption,” may state, in addition to any other condition, that the redemption is conditioned upon the availability on the redemption date of sufficient moneys to pay the Redemption Price of the Series 2010 Bonds to be redeemed. The failure of any owner of a Series 2010 Bond to be redeemed to receive notice of redemption will not affect the validity of the proceedings for the redemption of such Series 2010 Bond.

If on the redemption date moneys for the redemption of the Series 2010 Bonds of like maturity to be redeemed, together with interest thereon to the redemption date, are held by the Trustee so as to be available for payment of the redemption price, and if notice of redemption has been mailed, then interest on the Series 2010 Bonds of such maturity will cease to accrue from and after the redemption date and such Series 2010 Bonds will no longer be considered to be Outstanding.

Notice of Purchase in Lieu of Optional Redemption and its Effect

Notice of purchase of the Series 2010 Bonds will be given in the name of the College to the registered owners of the Series 2010 Bonds to be purchased by first-class mail, postage prepaid, not less than 30 days nor more than 45 days prior to the Purchase Date specified in such notice. The Series 2010 Bonds to be purchased are required to be tendered on the Purchase Date to the Trustee. Series 2010 Bonds to be purchased that are not so tendered will be deemed to have been properly tendered for purchase. If the Series 2010 Bonds are called for purchase in lieu of an optional redemption, such purchase will not extinguish the indebtedness of the Authority evidenced thereby or modify the terms of the Series 2010 Bonds. Such Series 2010 Bonds need not be cancelled, and will remain Outstanding under the Resolution and continue to bear interest.

The College’s obligation to purchase a Series 2010 Bond to be purchased or cause it to be purchased is conditioned upon the availability of sufficient money to pay the Purchase Price for all of the Series 2010 Bonds to be purchased on the Purchase Date. If sufficient money is available on the Purchase Date to pay the Purchase Price of the Series 2010 Bonds to be purchased, the former registered owners of such Series 2010 Bonds will have no claim thereunder or under the Resolution or otherwise for payment of any amount other than the Purchase Price. If sufficient money is not available on the Purchase Date for payment of the Purchase Price, the Series 2010 Bonds tendered or deemed tendered for purchase will continue to be registered in the name of the registered owners on the Purchase Date, who will be entitled to the payment of the principal of and interest on such Series 2010 Bonds in accordance with their respective terms.

If not all of the Outstanding Series 2010 Bonds are to be purchased, the Series 2010 Bonds to be purchased will be selected by lot in the same manner as Series 2010 Bonds to be redeemed in part are to be selected.

For a more complete description of the redemption and other provisions relating to the Series 2010 Bonds, see “Appendix D - Summary of Certain Provisions of the Resolution.” Also see “- Book-Entry Only System” below for a description of the notices of redemption to be given to Beneficial Owners of the Series 2010 Bonds when the Book-Entry Only System is in effect.

Book-Entry Only System

The Depository Trust Company (“DTC”), New York, New York, will act as the securities depository for the Series 2010 Bonds. The Series 2010 Bonds will be issued as fully-registered securities registered in the name of Cede & Co. (DTC’s partnership nominee) or such other name as may be requested by an authorized representative of DTC. One fully-registered Series 2010 Bond certificate will be issued for each maturity of each Series of the Series 2010 Bonds, totaling in the aggregate the principal amount of the Series 2010 Bonds, and will be deposited with DTC.

DTC is a limited-purpose trust company organized under the New York Banking Law, a “banking organization” within the meaning of the New York Banking Law, a member of the Federal Reserve System, a “clearing corporation” within the meaning of the New York Uniform Commercial Code and a “clearing agency” registered pursuant to the provisions of Section 17A of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934. DTC holds and provides asset servicing for over 2.2 million issues of U.S. and non-U.S. equity, corporate and municipal debt issues and money

market instruments from over 100 countries that DTC's participants ("Direct Participants") deposit with DTC. DTC also facilitates the post-trade settlement among Direct Participants of sales and other securities transactions in deposited securities through electronic computerized book-entry transfers and pledges between Direct Participants' accounts, thereby eliminating the need for physical movement of securities certificates. Direct Participants include both U.S. and non-U.S. securities brokers and dealers, banks, trust companies, clearing corporations and certain other organizations. DTC is a wholly-owned subsidiary of The Depository Trust & Clearing Corporation ("DTCC"). DTCC, in turn, is owned by a number of Direct Participants of DTC and Members of the National Securities Clearing Corporation, Fixed Income Clearing Corporation and Emerging Markets Clearing Corporation ("NSCC", "FICC" and "EMCC", respectively, also subsidiaries of DTCC), as well as by the New York Stock Exchange, Inc., the American Stock Exchange LLC and the National Association of Securities Dealers, Inc. Access to the DTC system is also available to others such as both U.S. and non-U.S. securities brokers and dealers, banks, trust companies and clearing corporations that clear through or maintain a custodial relationship with a Direct Participant, either directly or indirectly ("Indirect Participants", and together with Direct Participants, "Participants"). The DTC Rules applicable to its Participants are on file with the Securities and Exchange Commission.

Purchases of the Series 2010 Bonds under the DTC system must be made by or through Direct Participants, which will receive a credit for the Series 2010 Bonds on DTC's records. The ownership interest of each actual purchaser of each Series 2010 Bond ("Beneficial Owner") is in turn to be recorded on the Direct and Indirect Participants' records. Beneficial Owners will not receive written confirmation from DTC of their purchase, but Beneficial Owners are expected to receive written confirmations providing details of the transaction, as well as periodic statements of their holdings, from the Direct or Indirect Participant through which the Beneficial Owner entered into the transaction. Transfers of ownership interests in the Series 2010 Bonds are to be accomplished by entries made on the books of Direct and Indirect Participants acting on behalf of Beneficial Owners. Beneficial Owners will not receive certificates representing their ownership interests in the Series 2010 Bonds, except in the event that use of the book-entry system for such Series 2010 Bonds is discontinued.

To facilitate subsequent transfers, all Series 2010 Bonds deposited by Direct Participants with DTC are registered in the name of DTC's partnership nominee, Cede & Co., or such other name as may be requested by an authorized representative of DTC. The deposit of the Series 2010 Bonds with DTC and their registration in the name of Cede & Co. or such other nominee do not effect any change in beneficial ownership. DTC has no knowledge of the actual Beneficial Owners of the Series 2010 Bonds; DTC's records reflect only the identity of the Direct Participants to whose accounts such Bonds are credited, which may or may not be the Beneficial Owners. The Direct and Indirect Participants will remain responsible for keeping account of their holdings on behalf of their customers.

Conveyance of notices and other communications by DTC to Direct Participants, by Direct Participants to Indirect Participants and by Direct Participants and Indirect Participants to Beneficial Owners will be governed by arrangements among them, subject to any statutory or regulatory requirements as may be in effect from time to time.

Redemption notices will be sent to DTC. If less than all of the Series 2010 Bonds within a maturity of a Series of the Series 2010 Bonds are being redeemed, DTC's practice is to determine by lot the amount of the interest of each Direct Participant to be redeemed.

Neither DTC nor Cede & Co. (nor any other DTC nominee) will consent or vote with respect to the Series 2010 Bonds unless authorized by a Direct Participant in accordance with DTC's procedures. Under its usual procedures, DTC mails an Omnibus Proxy to the Authority as soon as possible after the record date. The Omnibus Proxy assigns Cede & Co.'s consenting or voting rights to those Direct Participants to whose accounts the Series 2010 Bonds are credited on the record date (identified in a listing attached to the Omnibus Proxy).

Principal and interest payments on the Series 2010 Bonds will be made to Cede & Co. or such other nominee as may be requested by an authorized representative of DTC. DTC's practice is to credit Direct Participants' accounts upon DTC's receipt of funds and corresponding detail information from the Authority or the Trustee on the payable date in accordance with their respective holdings shown on DTC's records. Payments by Participants to Beneficial Owners will be governed by standing instructions and customary practices, as is the case with securities held for the accounts of customers in bearer form or registered in "street name", and will be the responsibility of such Participant and not of DTC, the Trustee or the Authority, subject to any statutory or regulatory requirements as may be in effect from time to time. Payment of principal and interest to Cede & Co. (or such other nominee as may be requested by an authorized representative of DTC) is the responsibility of the Authority or the Trustee, disbursement of such

payments to Direct Participants is the responsibility of DTC and disbursement of such payments to the Beneficial Owners is the responsibility of Direct and Indirect Participants.

DTC may discontinue providing its services as securities depository with respect to the Series 2010 Bonds at any time by giving reasonable notice to the Authority or the Trustee. Under such circumstances, in the event that a successor securities depository is not obtained, the Series 2010 Bond certificates are required to be printed and delivered.

The Authority may decide to discontinue use of the system of book-entry transfers through DTC (or a successor securities depository). In that event, the Series 2010 Bond certificates will be printed and delivered to DTC.

The information herein concerning DTC and DTC's book-entry-only system has been obtained from sources that the Authority believes to be reliable, but the Authority takes no responsibility for the accuracy thereof.

Each person for whom a Participant acquires an interest in the Series 2010 Bonds, as nominee, may desire to make arrangements with such Participant to receive a credit balance in the records of such Participant, and may desire to make arrangements with such Participant to have all notices of redemption or other communications to DTC, which may affect such persons, to be forwarded in writing by such Participant and to have notification made of all interest payments. NEITHER THE AUTHORITY NOR THE TRUSTEE WILL HAVE ANY RESPONSIBILITY OR OBLIGATION TO SUCH PARTICIPANTS OR THE PERSONS FOR WHOM THEY ACT AS NOMINEES WITH RESPECT TO THE SERIES 2010 BONDS.

So long as Cede & Co. is the registered owner of the Series 2010 Bonds, as nominee for DTC, references herein to the Bondholders or registered owners of the Series 2010 Bonds (other than under "PART 10 - TAX MATTERS" herein) mean Cede & Co., as aforesaid, and do not mean the Beneficial Owners of the Series 2010 Bonds.

When reference is made to any action which is required or permitted to be taken by the Beneficial Owners, such reference shall only relate to those permitted to act (by statute, regulation or otherwise) on behalf of such Beneficial Owners for such purposes. When notices are given, they shall be sent by the Trustee to DTC only.

For every transfer and exchange of Series 2010 Bonds, the Beneficial Owner may be charged a sum sufficient to cover any tax, fee or other governmental charge that may be imposed in relation thereto.

The Authority, in its sole discretion and without the consent of any other person, may terminate the services of DTC with respect to the Series 2010 Bonds if the Authority determines that (i) DTC is unable to discharge its responsibilities with respect to the Series 2010 Bonds, or (ii) a continuation of the requirement that all of the Outstanding Bonds be registered in the registration books kept by the Trustee in the name of Cede & Co., as nominee of DTC, is not in the best interests of the Beneficial Owners. In the event that no substitute securities depository is found by the Authority or restricted registration is no longer in effect, Series 2010 Bond certificates will be delivered as described in the Resolution.

NEITHER THE AUTHORITY, THE COLLEGE NOR THE TRUSTEE WILL HAVE ANY RESPONSIBILITY OR OBLIGATION TO DIRECT PARTICIPANTS, TO INDIRECT PARTICIPANTS, OR TO ANY BENEFICIAL OWNER WITH RESPECT TO (I) THE ACCURACY OF ANY RECORDS MAINTAINED BY DTC, ANY DIRECT PARTICIPANT, OR ANY INDIRECT PARTICIPANT, (II) ANY NOTICE THAT IS PERMITTED OR REQUIRED TO BE GIVEN TO THE OWNERS OF THE SERIES 2010 BONDS UNDER THE RESOLUTIONS; (III) THE SELECTION BY DTC OR ANY DIRECT PARTICIPANT OR INDIRECT PARTICIPANT OF ANY PERSON TO RECEIVE PAYMENT IN THE EVENT OF A PARTIAL REDEMPTION OF THE SERIES 2010 BONDS; (IV) THE PAYMENT BY DTC OR ANY DIRECT PARTICIPANT OR INDIRECT PARTICIPANT OF ANY AMOUNT WITH RESPECT TO THE PRINCIPAL OR REDEMPTION PREMIUM, IF ANY, OR INTEREST DUE WITH RESPECT TO THE SERIES 2010 BONDS; (V) ANY CONSENT GIVEN OR OTHER ACTION TAKEN BY DTC AS THE OWNER OF THE SERIES 2010 BONDS; OR (VI) ANY OTHER MATTER.

Principal and Interest Requirements

The following table sets forth the amounts required to be paid by the College during each twelve month period ending June 30 of the Bond Years shown for the payment of debt service on the principal of and interest on the Series 2010 Bonds. Other than a purchase money mortgage relating to the acquisition of a parcel adjacent to the College's Long Island Campus (see "Appendix B – Financial Statements of St. Joseph's College and Independent Auditors' Report, Note F") when issued, the Series 2010 Bonds will be the only outstanding indebtedness of the College.

<u>12 Month Period Ending June 30</u>	<u>Principal Payments</u>	<u>Interest Payments</u>	<u>Total Debt Service</u>
2011	\$660,000	\$1,158,694	\$1,818,694
2012	675,000	1,290,331	1,965,331
2013	685,000	1,276,831	1,961,831
2014	705,000	1,261,419	1,966,419
2015	725,000	1,243,794	1,968,794
2016	750,000	1,221,138	1,971,138
2017	775,000	1,194,888	1,969,888
2018	805,000	1,167,763	1,972,763
2019	835,000	1,135,563	1,970,563
2020	870,000	1,102,163	1,972,163
2021	915,000	1,066,275	1,981,275
2022	965,000	1,018,238	1,983,238
2023	1,015,000	967,575	1,982,575
2024	1,070,000	914,288	1,984,288
2025	1,125,000	858,113	1,983,113
2026	1,190,000	799,050	1,989,050
2027	1,250,000	736,575	1,986,575
2028	1,320,000	670,950	1,990,950
2029	1,390,000	601,650	1,991,650
2030	1,465,000	528,675	1,993,675
2031	1,545,000	451,763	1,996,763
2032	1,630,000	370,650	2,000,650
2033	1,715,000	285,075	2,000,075
2034	1,810,000	195,038	2,005,038
2035	1,905,000	100,013	2,005,013

PART 4 — THE PROJECT

Proceeds from the Series 2010 Bonds will be used to finance the construction/renovation of two projects on the Brooklyn Campus and the Long Island Campus in support of the Institution's athletic program and a renovation on the Long Island Campus that will convert classrooms into science labs. The following are specific descriptions of each component of the project.

Brooklyn Campus. Athletic Facility Project. This portion of the Project consists of construction of a new approximately 38,000 square foot athletic facility on the Brooklyn Campus. The new facility will house an NCAA regulation basketball court with seating for approximately 250 spectators and men's and women's locker rooms for both visiting teams and Institution teams, a fitness center, coaches suite, and a parking garage (consisting of approximately 14,000 square feet of the total 38,000 square feet of the athletic facility) to accommodate 95 vehicles.

Long Island Campus.

(i) **Athletic Facility Project.** This portion of the Project consists of the construction of a new athletic facility on 24.8 acres of recently-acquired property. This new athletic facility will include baseball and softball fields, 6

illuminated tennis courts, a 400-meter all weather running track, a multi-purpose field with approximately 1,500 seat capacity bleachers, locker room space, and parking for 175 cars.

(ii) Classroom Conversion Project. This portion of the Project consists of the conversion of four classrooms at the Long Island Campus into new laboratory space. Two new biology laboratories will be constructed directly below the chemistry laboratories, each able to seat approximately 20 students and containing digital projectors, internet access and audiovisual equipment.

PART 5 — ESTIMATED SOURCES AND USES OF FUNDS

The estimated sources and uses of funds from the sale of the Series 2010 Bonds are expected to be as follows:

Sources of Funds	
Principal Amount of the Series 2010 Bonds	\$ 27,795,000
Plus: Net Original Issue Premium	<u>262,516</u>
Total Sources	\$ <u>28,057,516</u>
Uses of Funds	
Costs of the Project	\$ 25,230,000
Debt Service Reserve Fund	2,005,038
Underwriter’s Discount	169,274
Costs of Issuance	<u>653,204</u>
Total Uses	\$ <u>28,057,516</u>

PART 6 — THE COLLEGE

GENERAL INFORMATION

Introduction

The College is an independent and coeducational college which provides affordable private education to a diverse population of academically eligible students who live within commuting distance of its Brooklyn Campus or Long Island Campus. The main campus is located in the residential Clinton Hill section of Brooklyn, New York and the Long Island branch campus is located in Patchogue, Long Island, New York. The goals of the College include offering curricula that foster the knowledge and intellectual skills associated with the liberally educated person; preparing students for their careers by offering the necessary professional and pre-professional education; providing for the needs of a diversified student population with varied educational and professional experiences; and supporting educational programs and services that will contribute to the vitality of the communities served by the College’s Brooklyn and Long Island Campuses.

The College was originally chartered by the Regents of the University of the State of New York on February 24, 1916 as an all women’s college. Reverend William T. Dillon, J.D., Professor of Philosophy, Dean of the College, and later its President, guided its growth during the significant years that followed. The College was accredited in 1928 by the Commission of Higher Education of the Middle States Association of Colleges and Secondary Schools. Sister Vincent Therese Tuohy assumed the presidency in 1956. McEntegart Hall, a multi-functional building housing the library and classrooms, was opened in 1965 and The Dillon Child Study Center followed in 1968. Sister George Aquin O’Connor was elected President and assumed responsibility on July 1, 1969.

In 1970, a Charter amendment changed the name to St. Joseph’s College and enabled the College to admit the first men students to full matriculation. February 2, 1971, St. Joseph’s College inaugurated an extension program in

the collegiate center formerly known as Brentwood College. In 1978, St. Joseph's College expanded its operation at the Long Island Branch Campus to a full four-year program and in 1979, moved to a new twenty-five acre lake-side campus in Patchogue. On June 30, 1997 Sister George Aquin O'Connor resigned as president and was succeeded by Sister Elizabeth A. Hill, M.A., J.D. on July 1, 1997. In the intervening years the College has strengthened undergraduate programs while introducing new Master's programs in Management, Literacy and Cognition, Nursing, Special Education, Human Resources Management, as well as the MBA. Significant resources have been invested in technology and all classrooms are smart classrooms, equipped with the latest technological support. All buildings are wired, and the two campuses are connected with video-conferencing equipment, enabling a number of courses to be taught simultaneously at both campuses. A 33,000 sq. ft. Business and Technology Center opened on the Long Island Campus in 2001, and St. Angela Hall Academy was purchased to provide additional classroom and administrative office space on the Brooklyn campus. During the period from 2001-2007 a number of the buildings in Brooklyn were updated and renovated to provide more modern facilities while maintaining the beauty and elegance of the landmark district in which they are located.

Governance

The Board of Trustees governs the affairs and property of the College according to its statutes and by-laws. The Chief Executive Officer of the College is the President, Sister Elizabeth A. Hill, M.A., J.D., who is responsible for all educational and financial affairs.

Board of Trustees

The present trustees, their respective occupations, and expiration date of their current terms as trustee are:

<u>Trustee</u>	<u>Occupation</u>	<u>Term Expires</u>
W. Christian Drewes, Esq., Chair	Partner, Kelley, Drye and Warren, LLP	2012
Frank Lourenso, Vice Chair	Chairman of Commercial Banking & Middle Mkt., JPMorgan Chase	2012
Mary M. Lai, Chair Finance Comm.	Treasurer Emerita, Senior Advisor, Long Island University	2012
Dennis McCarthy, Chair Investment Comm.	Senior Partner, Asset Management Associates of New York	2011
Sheila Baird	Partner, Kimelman & Baird, LLC	2010
S. Jean Marie Amore, B.S., M.A., Ed.D.	President, St. Joseph Convent	2012
Mark Anderson, B.A., M.B.A.		2010
John R. Bransfield, Jr.	President, Roslyn Savings Bank, Retired	2012
John Buran, B.S., M.B.A.	President and CEO, Flushing Savings Bank	2011
Mary Butz	Educator, Independent Consultant, Edspiration Enterprises, LLC	2010
Christopher R. Carroll, B.A., J.D.	Founding Partner, Carroll, McNulty & Kull LLC	2012
John A. Danzi	Owner, Long Island Hotels, LLC	2012
Mary Ellen Freeley, M.S., Ed.D.	Assoc. Prof. of English, St. John's University	2011
S. Elizabeth A. Hill, C.S.J.	President, St. Joseph's College, NY	
Stephen Hochberg, Esq.	Retired Attorney	2010
S. Elizabeth A. Johnson, M.A.	Distinguished Professor, Dept of Theology, Fordham University	2010
Daniel J. Keane, B.S.	Counselor at Law	2010
Dorothy Bloodgood Kennedy, B.A., M.S.	Alumna of St. Joseph's College, NY	2011
S. John Raymond McGann	Professor of Education, St. Joseph's College, NY	2012
William C. McGarry, B.S.	Chairman, President and CEO, Ridgewood Bank	2011

S. Kathleen McKinney, M.S., Ed.D.	Principal, The Mary Louis Academy	2012
Peter M. Meyer	President, NYC Market, TD Bank	2010
Frances Resheske, B.A.	Senior Vice President, Public Affairs, Consolidated Edison Company of NY	2010
Erminia Rivera	Vice President, AM&G Waterproofing, LLC, and Park Avenue Building and Roofing Supplies, LLC	2011
Peter M. Rogers, B.B.A.	President, Edwards and Company	2012
Lisa Rose, B.S.	Retired CEO & President, Clare Rose Inc.	2011
William P. Tucker, B.A., J.D.	Attorney	2010

Trustee Emeriti

N. Hilton Rosen., M.B.A., J.D. and S. Maria F. Stadleton, M.A.,

Administration

The following individuals serve as the senior administrators to the College:

<u>Administrator</u>	<u>Office</u>
S. Elizabeth A. Hill, M.A., J.D.	President
S. M. Florence Burns, Ph.D.	Assistant to the President
S. Loretta McGrann, Ph.D.	Provost
John C. Roth, M.B.A.	Chief Financial Officer
Nancy Connor, M. S.	V.P. for Advancement
Thomas G. Travis, Ph.D.	V.P. for Planning and Dean of the School of Professional & Graduate Studies
S. Margaret Buckley, Ed.D.	Academic Dean of the School and Arts & Sciences, Brooklyn Campus
Doris Stratmann, M.A.	Interim Dean of the School of Arts & Sciences, Long Island Campus
Susan M. Hudec, Ph.D.	Dean of Students & Student Life
Theresa LaRocca Meyer, M.S., Ph.D.	V.P. for Enrollment Management; Director of Admissions, Brooklyn Campus
Kenneth McCollum, Ph.D.	Chief Information Officer

Office of Enrollment Management

The Office of Enrollment Management oversees both offices of Admissions and Financial Aid on each campus, including the School of Professional and Graduate Studies. This office also handles the campus wide Recruitment Advertising plan, as well as recruitment publications. It is the role of the Enrollment Manager to oversee these offices to ensure optimal productivity through the stages of admitting, recruiting and enrolling students.

Office of Admissions

Each Admissions office is responsible for recruiting, interviewing, reviewing applications, and handling special events associated with admissions and recruitment. Professional staff for each of the Offices of Admissions includes individuals in the following positions. (i) for the Brooklyn Campus School of Arts and Sciences: Director of Admissions Operations; Three Associate Directors; Coordinator for Enrollment Communications; Three Assistant Directors; Two Assistants for Data Operations; One Administrative Assistant; (ii) for the Brooklyn Campus School of Professional and Graduate Studies: Director of Admissions; Coordinator for PGS Recruitment & Marketing; Three Assistant Directors, One Admissions Counselor; One Administrative Assistant; Coordinator for Nursing; and ten work-study students between both offices;(iii) Long Island Campus School of Arts & Sciences: Associate VP for Enrollment/Director of Admissions; Director of Admissions Operations; Sr. Associate Director; Associate Director of Graduate Admissions; Associate Director of Admissions for Data Operations; Assistant Director; Assistant to Director; Two Admissions Counselors; Four Administrative Assistants; and (iv) Long Island Campus School of Professional and Graduate Studies: Director of Admissions; Sr. Associate Director; Two Assistant Directors;

Assistant to Director; Sr. Administrative Assistant; Admissions Counselor; Admissions Counselor for BSN program.

Office of Institutional Advancement

St. Joseph's College Office of Institutional Advancement integrates the many branches of external affairs, alumni relations and development to expand the recognition, reputation and financial support of the College. The Office is responsible for all fundraising, publicity, government and community relations, publications and special events.

Nancy Connors, the vice president of Institutional Advancement, provides key strategic leadership for the College's resource development, including major and planned gifts. She oversees all facets of the various departmental branches of the Office of Institutional Advancement, including annual giving; planned and major giving; corporate, foundation and government grants; special events; alumni relations; stewardship; media and governmental relations; publications and web communications. She supervises the production of all recruitment material in conjunction with the Office of Enrollment Management, and oversees format and content for all publication materials and publicity.

The Advancement Office works closely with the College's faculty and staff to promote the programs and opportunities St. Joseph's has to offer, and to keep our surrounding communities up-to-date on the many exciting programs that are taking place at the College. The Office also works to develop and strengthen new and existing relationships with various constituents, including public, private and community groups. Through its fundraising efforts, the Office of Institutional Advancement cultivates gifts to support financial aid, academic offerings, technology upgrades, library acquisitions, faculty enrichment, capital improvements and general operating costs of the College.

Community Relations

With campuses in the historic Clinton Hill district of Brooklyn and Patchogue, Long Island, St. Joseph's College is committed to promoting civic engagement at the local, city, regional, state and national levels, St. Joseph's continually seeks out meaningful ways to work with our neighbors and local community to further enhance the area's quality of life.

Actively involved in both locales, the College works closely with New York City and Suffolk County officials and agencies, community organizations, business associations, social service providers and other local government groups and individuals on issues of mutual interest to the College and its surrounding communities. St. Joseph's College continually strives to inspire its students, faculty and staff to become more connected with the larger society as a whole by creating a greater sense of civic responsibility within. Seeking to build on that commitment and under the leadership of the president, the College hosts several annual public lectures for both the academic community and the community at large. The Presidential Lecture Series, established to further the educational goals of the College and support its mission, and the Dr. Reza Khatib and Georgianna Clifford Khatib Chair in Comparative Religion Lecture, established to promote interfaith dialog with the study of Islam being an integral part of the initiative, are two of the College's major annual community events.

Public Relations

The Office of Public Relations enhances the College's overall reputation by increasing its visibility through a variety of communication services to its internal and external audiences.

The public relations staff supports and promotes the institutional mission by effectively disseminating news and other information to the media, local government and public officials, leaders in the business and educational communities, general public and greater College community through press releases, media alerts, public service announcements, radio and television interviews, print materials and the College's website.

Facilities

A high-speed fiber optic intra-campus network connects all offices, instructional facilities, computer laboratories, and libraries on both the Brooklyn and Long Island Campuses. The network provides Internet access to all students, faculty, and staff. An integrated online library system enables students to search for and check out books available at either campus, as well as access to online data bases and other electronic information sources.

Brooklyn Campus

The Brooklyn Campus consists of the following buildings and structures: the original “245” building (Burns Hall), Sister Vincent Therese Hall (Tuohy Hall), Lorenzo Hall, the Dillon Child Study Center, McEntegart Hall, St. Angela Hall, 256 Clinton Avenue (St. Joseph’s Hall), and the outdoor stage. In addition, there are three outdoor parking lots. A lawn, called the “mall,” is the site for student activities.

The Grounds

The campus lies within a four-block area in the historic Clinton Hill section of Brooklyn. The grounds and buildings are maintained by a staff of 15 and are generally in very good condition.

McEntegart Hall and the Library

The College library is situated in a free-standing, five-level structure. Spacious reading areas, with seating for 300, including study carrels and shelf space for 200,000 volumes on four stack levels, provide an excellent environment for study and research.

As a follow-up to the 1998 Middle States review, a major retrospective conversion was completed, along with the installation of an automated library system (Endeavor Voyager) in 1999-2000. Students and faculty members may access the library’s holdings from any computer on campus as well as from home. In addition, numerous electronic databases have been added to the network, many of which provide full-text journal resources. Additional staff was added to provide reference services to evening and weekend students. Current statistics include the following: 107,000 volumes, 400 periodical subscriptions, 450 videos, 4000 reels of microfilm and numerous electronic databases.

Within the building, developments not specific to the library include computer labs, and offices for the Technology Department. During 2005 and 2006, the air conditioning and heating systems (HVAC) and the renovation of the cafeteria and book store were completed.

McEntegart Hall also houses the College archives, a curriculum library, a videoconference room, a chapel, eight classrooms, a book store, a cafeteria, a faculty lounge and study, and a Nursing Education laboratory.

Sister Vincent Therese Hall/ “245” Building (Tuohy Hall)

Classrooms are located in this building on the second and third floor. Administrative offices are also located in this building. An auditorium (maximum capacity of 400) with non-permanent seats is located on the first floor, which is used for various ceremonies, lectures, performances, and additional functions. This auditorium was refurbished during 2009. This included:

New flooring, painting, new lighting, new chairs and storage areas for furniture as well as the installation of corridors on the side areas.

An Alumni Room offers space for faculty presentations, cultural exhibits, lectures, and meetings.

In the original “245” building (Burns Hall), parlors are used to hold student gatherings and receptions, such as the annual Child Study Department’s Graduate Reunion, other alumna gatherings, fundraising events, Honors receptions, and faculty social events. Two rooms are available to students for the purpose of dining, watching television, socializing and access to computers. The second and third floors of this area were renovated from a convent to offices for the Enrollment Management and Admissions areas.

Science/Nursing/Psychology Laboratories

The Biology and Chemistry laboratories, which were completely reconstructed in 1999 and 2000 at a cost of \$1.6 million, now have computerized workstations that enhance both teaching and learning. The Biology laboratories are located in the rear of the “245” building. They include two teaching labs, two prep rooms, and a research lab. The Physical Sciences Department has a laboratory serving General and Advanced Chemistry, an Organic Chemistry lab, two instrumentation labs, and a Physics lab.

All aforementioned labs are used by students fulfilling core, concentration, and major requirements. This ensures that all students, including teacher education students, receive the same level of preparation in the sciences.

The Nursing Department laboratory, which consists of a large room with three simulated client units, is located on the third floor of McEntergart Hall.

The Psychology Department has both its lab and departmental offices in the 256 Clinton Avenue Building. Experimental equipment, a PC with specialized software and physiological models (among other materials) are kept and used in this lab.

Equipment inventories are constantly reviewed and upgraded by faculty. Currently, these facilities are adequate for the present student body.

Studios

The art studio is located in Sister Vincent Therese Hall (Tuohy Hall) on the third floor and is equipped with resources necessary for coursework.

Dillon Child Study Center

The Dillon Child Study Center, which opened in 1968, is the College's laboratory preschool. It serves approximately 100 two-, three-, four- and five-year-old children in both general education and inclusive settings. Child Study students observe these classes in their freshman year, engage in preschool practicum in their sophomore year, and conduct their thesis projects within the Center during their senior year. The first floor of the Dillon Child Study Center contains the offices of the Director, the school nurse, staff and Child Study faculty offices, a related services room and a conference room, as well as Child Study faculty offices, a lunch room, and additional rooms for related services, computer and library resources.

During 2008 and 2009 the first and second floor hallways were renovated with new floor tiles and lights. The lobby/entrance to the center was completely redone.

Child Study Faculty Offices

Child Study Faculty offices are located in the Dillon Center. Located on the first floor, the main Child Study office houses the Associate Chairperson (Dr. Susan Straut Collard) and the Coordinator of Student Placement (S. Mary Sivillo), as well as department files and student records. One other faculty office is on the first floor and three others are on the second floor. Thus, students have easy and confidential access to all Child Study faculty and advisors. It is extremely convenient to be in such close proximity to the laboratory preschool staff and classrooms.

256 Clinton Avenue Building (St. Joseph's Hall)

The Child Study Department holds bi-monthly meetings in this building's conference room, which also houses the Office of Institutional Advancement, the Alumni Office, several academic department offices, and the Psychology Laboratory.

St. Angela Hall

In 2001, St. Angela Hall (across the street from the back of the "245" building) was added to the Campus. The ACES Center is located in St. Angela Hall, as is the Campus Ministry Office.

The Secondary Education Office is located in the St. Angela Hall building (near the auditorium). It provides office space and houses department files. This office, together with major departmental offices of students in the education program, provides space for student advisement.

Classrooms in this building also have been remodeled. In addition, a stage and seating area are used to host guest speakers and meetings. There is a conference room, and a small cafeteria that is open to faculty and students within this building. An outside table area may be used to conduct study groups when the weather permits.

Athletic Facilities

Athletic facilities, including the gymnasium, are located on the lower level of Sister Vincent Therese Hall (Tuohy Hall). During 2007, a cardio room and weight room were constructed. The cardio room has several aerobic/cardio fitness machines as well as free weights and weightlifting machines in the weight room. Restrooms and Locker rooms with showers for men and women are provided. The College presently is renting the gym at Brooklyn Technical H.S. to practice and play varsity games. As described above, a portion of the proceeds of the Series 2010 Bonds are being applied to pay costs of construction of a new athletic facility on the Brooklyn Campus. See "PART 4 — THE PROJECT."

Parking

The College is within walking distance of several major metropolitan transit subway stations, as well as several city bus routes. In addition, there is a student parking lot that holds a maximum of 120 cars. This lot is staffed by valet attendants. There are four Faculty and Staff parking lots; the Convent lot (18 spaces), and two Waverly Avenue lots (18 spaces and 10 spaces), and an indoor garage on Vanderbilt Avenue from which the College rents between 50-60 parking spaces daily, depending on the day of the week. Faculty members and staff apply for parking privileges each semester based on their schedules. Those students and faculty who do not use the parking lots are able to park on the streets surrounding the campus, subject to alternate side of the street parking regulations.

Long Island Campus

The Long Island Campus of St. Joseph's College is located in Patchogue, New York at 155 West Roe Boulevard on a 27-acre site. The campus consists of O'Connor Hall, the Callahan Library, the Business and Technology Center, the John Danzi Athletic Center, and the Clare Rose Playhouse. O'Connor Hall, the Callahan Library, the Business and Technology Center, and the John Danzi Athletic Center are all equipped with automatic door openers for handicapped access.

O'Connor Hall (Main Building)

O'Connor Hall houses administration and faculty offices, a Child Study and Secondary Education wing with 21 administration/faculty offices for Child Study and Secondary Education, 33 classrooms (all with internet access connections), computer labs, Biology (updated '05-'06), Chemistry, Physics and Psychology Laboratories, Nursing Department Laboratory, Art studios and Music facilities, Faculty and Student Lounges, Offices for Career Development, Wellness and Disability Services, Cafeteria, Auditorium, Chapel, Book Store, and the McGann and Shea Conference Centers.

The Callahan Library

The Callahan Library is a modern 25,000 sq. ft., freestanding facility with seating for more than 300 readers. A curriculum library, 4 seminar rooms, administrative offices, and four classrooms are housed in this building. Holdings consist of 75,546 titles, 105,635 volumes, and 1,862 videos, audiotapes, etc. The library subscribes to 307 print titles. Patrons have access to the Internet and to several online databases.

Business and Technology Center

Business and Technology Center is a new state-of-the-art 33,000 sq. ft. building with faculty offices, 13 classrooms, a videoconference room, and computer labs.

John Danzi Athletic Center

John Danzi Athletic Center is a 48,000 square feet athletic and recreation center that includes a competitive size, six-lane swimming pool, an indoor track, basketball courts, 1,500 seat main gymnasium, a cardiovascular fitness room, a free weight room, an aerobics room, men and women locker rooms, six offices, and two classrooms. Outdoor facilities presently consist of one athletic field. As described above, a portion of the proceeds of the Series 2010 Bonds are being applied to pay costs of construction of a new athletic facility on the Long Island Campus. See "PART 4 — THE PROJECT."

The Clare Rose Playhouse

The Clare Rose Playhouse serves the College for both theater courses and for college and community theater programs. In addition to training student actors, the Playhouse hosts productions of children's theater, storytelling, and theater for the deaf.

Parking

Parking places in 2010 numbered 1507. With the purchase of the present Institutional Advancement Office, the College gained a lot that has been converted into 20 parking spots. In 1999, the College purchased three lots on the western end of the campus and converted the space into a paved parking lot with 74 spots. During 2002-03, the College has arranged for the use of off-site parking for 200 student cars. The location is less than one mile from the campus. A shuttle bus runs from the lot to the campus from 7:30 AM to 7:00 PM. Until additional property can be acquired, the College will continue this arrangement.

Recruitment

The College intends to enhance its recruitment of qualified students by (i) maintaining a program of scholarships based on academic achievement; (ii) introducing special scholarships to be awarded by nomination of high school guidance counselors in selected high schools to students who meet specified academic criteria; (iii) offering need-based institutional financial aid; (iv) continuing the grant program introduced in 1999 for students in high schools underrepresented at the four year college level (two students from each of the five high schools in the Patchogue area; (v) increasing outreach to adults working in business and health/human services sectors; (vi) supporting the committee for diversity and multiculturalism on the Long Island Campus; (vii) increasing the number of high school visiting days on the Brooklyn Campus; and (viii) strengthening the Admissions Staff as needed.

Retention

The College strives to retain its qualified students by (i) maintaining the Academic Center (skills development) at the Long Island Campus and the Writing Center (skill development) at the Brooklyn Campus; (ii) maintaining the system of peer counselors and tutors; (iii) maintaining the Freshman Year Program at the Long Island Campus and the Humanities Program at the Brooklyn Campus to help freshman students to bond with other student, to learn time management, and to integrate themselves into the college community.

Academic Programs Initiatives

- 1) Strengthen the internship programs related to major departments;
- 2) Continue to develop appropriate undergraduate certificate and degree programs in areas of current interest and need;
- 3) Long Island Consortium for Integrated Learning – LICIL – consortium of SUNY Stony Brook and Long Island colleges, funded by National Science Foundation;
- 4) Develop additional graduate programs in areas of undergraduate strength; and
- 5) Continuing Educational Alliance with corporate sponsors Keyspan, Ridgewood Savings Bank, Hospital and Nursing Cooperative, Bell Atlantic, and Whitman Packaging.

Programs

The College offers a Bachelors Degree in the following programs:

Accounting	Marketing
Biology	Mathematics
Business Administration	Psychology
Chemistry	Recreation
Child Study	Social Science
Computer Information Systems	Economics
Criminal Justice	Political Science
English	Sociology
History	Spanish
Human Relations	Speech

Adult Undergraduate programs are also offered at the College in the following areas: Business Administration with a major in Accounting, Community Health and Human Services, Computer Information Systems, Criminal Justice, General Studies, Health Administration, Marketing, Nursing (R.N. required), Organizational Management

The following Graduate Programs are offered at the College:

- Executive M.B.A.
- M.A. in Childhood or Adolescence Special Education with an annotation in Severe and Multiple Disabilities
- M.A. in Infant/Toddler Early Childhood Special Education
- M.A. in Literacy and Cognition
- M.B.A. in Accounting
- M.B.A. in Health Care Management
- M.S. in Human Services Management and Leadership
- M.S. in Management: with concentrations in Organizational Management, Health Care Management and Human Resources Management
- M.S. with a major in Nursing

The college offers a Certificate Program in the following areas of study:

- Alcohol and Addictions Counseling
- Counseling
- Criminology/Criminal Justice
- Gerontology
- Health Care Management
- Health Instruction
- Home Care Administration
- Hospice
- Human Resources (also available online)
- Information Technology Applications
- Leadership and Supervision (also available online)
- Management
- Marketing, Advertising and Public Relations
- Training and Staff Development

OPERATING INFORMATION

Admissions

The enrollment at the College is based on the following data:

	<u>2005</u>	<u>2006</u>	<u>2007</u>	<u>2008</u>	<u>2009</u>
Applications Received	*2,751	*2,803	3,385	3,366	3,651
Acceptances	*2,292	*2,342	2,708	2,668	2,874
New Students Enrolled	*1,192	*1,174	1,359	1,352	1,456
Total Enrollment	5,419	5,393	5,468	5,505	5,716

* Does not include Brooklyn Professional and Graduate Studies

Enrollment

	Full-Time	Part-Time	FTE	Total FTE	Total Headcount
<u>Undergraduate</u>					
Fall 2005	3,637	1,346	(665)	4,302	4,983
Fall 2006	3,569	1,316	(648)	4,217	4,885
Fall 2007	3,651	1,244	(606)	4,229	4,867
Fall 2008	3,671	1,201	(574)	4,226	4,853
Fall 2009	3,986	1,082	(462)	4,418	5,038
<u>Graduate</u>					
Fall 2005	39	397	(240)	279	436
Fall 2006	41	467	(281)	322	508
Fall 2007	28	573	(315)	343	601
Fall 2008	28	624	(359)	387	652
Fall 2009	30	648	(373)	403	678

Enrollment Trends

The College has had an overall steady increase in enrollment over the past five years. While the Graduate Enrollment had been relatively low in the past because of limited graduate programs offered, the College has initiated additional graduate programs to attract additional students.

Enrollment Management Plan

It is a goal of the College to increase enrollment to 1600 head count at the Brooklyn Campus and 4,500 head count at the Long Island Campus over the next five to seven years by (i) offering curricula that foster the knowledge and intellectual skills associated with the liberally educated person; (ii) preparing students for their careers by offering the necessary professional and pre-professional education; (iii) providing for the needs of a diversified student population with varied educational and professional experiences; and (iv) providing graduate programs that extend the College's mission and contribute to the vitality of the community.

Freshman SAT Scores

Scholastic Achievement Test ("SAT") scores for regularly admitted freshman for the past four years are as follows:

	<u>2006</u>	<u>2007</u>	<u>2008</u>	<u>2009</u>
Verbal: SJC	506	510	512	503
NYS	497	483	491	488
National	508	503	502	502
Math: SJC	517	514	521	524
NYS	511	501	505	504
National	520	518	515	515
Total: SJC	1,023	1,024	1,033	1,027
NYS	1,008	984	996	992
National	1,028	1,021	1,017	1,017

Student Charges

Undergraduate Tuition & Fees Comparison (Flat Rate)

	<u>2009-2010 Tuition/Yr.</u>	<u>2008-2009 Tuition/Yr.</u>	<u>Increase (%)</u>
Mercy College	\$15,990	\$14,990	6.67%
St. Joseph's College (Bklyn)	\$16,200	\$15,400	5.19%
St. Joseph's College (Patch)	\$16,200	\$15,400	5.19%
St. Francis College	\$16,600	\$15,200	9.21%
Molloy College	\$19,970	\$18,700	6.79%
Dowling College	\$20,860	\$19,000	9.79%
Manhattan College	\$23,900	\$22,940	4.18%
Adelphi University	\$26,230	\$25,240	3.92%
Iona College	\$25,600	\$24,406	4.89%
L.I.U. @ Brooklyn	\$27,368	\$26,090	4.90%
Hofstra University	\$29,080	\$27,600	5.36%
St. John's University	\$29,350	\$28,100	4.45%
Pratt Institute	\$33,500	\$31,700	5.68%
Pace University	\$31,860	\$30,632	4.01%
Fordham University	\$35,825	\$34,200	4.75%

Graduate Tuition & Fees Comparison (Per Credit)

	<u>2009-2010 Tuition/Yr.</u>	<u>2008-2009 Tuition/Yr.</u>	<u>Increase (%)</u>
St. Joseph's College	\$625	\$600	4.17%
Dowling College	\$805	\$735	9.52%
Hofstra University	\$925	\$850	8.82%
Adelphi University	\$865	\$830	4.22%
L.I.U. @ Southampton	\$930	\$882	5.44%
L.I.U. @ C.W. Post	\$930	\$882	5.44%
St. John's University (Business)	\$920	\$880	4.55%
Touro College	\$600	\$550	9.09%

(Information has been obtained by phone calls to the Business Officers and Bursars at the various institutions. The amounts shown above are for tuition only and do not include fees.)

Student Financial Aid

The College administers a student aid program through which approximately 71% of the student body receives financial assistance in the form of grants, loans or campus employment. In the fiscal year 2008-09, the College provided \$12,689,245 in scholarship and grant aid to students. In addition, Federal grants to students from the Pell Program and from the Supplemental Education Opportunity Grants Program amounted to \$3,866,893. New York residents enrolled at the College received \$4,758,992 from the State's Tuition Assistance Plan, Aid for Part Time Study and other various NY State scholarships in 2008-09. A summary of the funds provided to students in the form of scholarships and grants for the past five fiscal years is as follows:

<u>Fiscal Year</u>	<u>Total Scholarship and Grant Aid Provided by the College</u>
2004-2005	\$ 8,032,248
2005-2006	9,193,932
2006-2007	9,676,239
2007-2008	10,950,783
2008-2009	12,689,245

In addition to scholarships and grant aid, many students finance their educational costs with jobs and loans. In 2008-09, students earned approximately \$720,365 from College-sponsored employment opportunities (Federal Work Study and Campus Employment combined), and borrowed approximately \$141,500 through the Perkins Student Loan Program, \$22,601,802 under the Stafford Student Loan program, and \$2,344,011 in various alternative loan programs.

Faculty

	Full Time	Part Time (FTE)	Total FTE
Fall 2005	148	103	251
Fall 2006	155	119	274
Fall 2007	147	131	278
Fall 2008	161	137	298
Fall 2009	168	146	314

Faculty Credentials (Full Time)

	Doctorate (PhD)	Juris Doctorate	MBA/MS & CPA	Other Masters
Fall 2005	83	4	29	32
Fall 2006	91	3	32	29
Fall 2007	91	3	28	25
Fall 2008	106	3	26	26
Fall 2009	109	4	28	27

ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENT INFORMATION

The financial statements of the College as of June 30, 2009, and for the year then ended, included in Appendix B to this Official Statement have been audited by Grant Thornton LLP, independent accountants, as stated in their report appearing therein.

Presented on the following pages are summaries derived from the College's audited financial statements for the years indicated.

Operating Results

	<u>2009</u>	<u>2008</u>	<u>2007</u>	<u>2006</u>	<u>2005</u>
Tuition & Fees (Net of Scholarships)	\$59,353,278	\$54,707,499	\$49,937,456	\$47,714,086	\$43,246,679
Other	3,264,433	4,630,162	4,302,224	3,956,158	4,010,763
Net Assets Released	<u>1,575,658</u>	<u>918,587</u>	<u>1,701,202</u>	<u>676,822</u>	<u>1,102,331</u>
Total Revenue	\$64,193,369	\$60,256,248	\$55,940,882	\$52,347,066	\$48,359,773
Education	\$34,503,668	\$32,267,961	\$29,677,818	\$27,301,858	\$24,898,276
Other	<u>27,412,215</u>	<u>26,347,360</u>	<u>24,427,995</u>	<u>21,702,953</u>	<u>19,041,991</u>
Total Expenses	\$61,915,883	\$58,615,321	\$54,105,813	\$49,004,811	\$43,940,267
Excess Revenue Over Expenses	\$ 2,277,486	\$ 1,640,927	\$ 1,835,069	\$ 3,342,255	\$ 4,419,506

Balance Sheet

	<u>2009</u>	<u>2008</u>	<u>2007</u>	<u>2006</u>	<u>2005</u>
<u>Assets:</u>					
Cash and cash Equivalents	\$ 631,549	\$ 610,706	\$ 552,273	\$ 1,470,965	\$ 391,461
Investments (at market)	34,406,108	47,861,654	54,341,320	49,637,574	44,160,229
Property plant and Equipment, net	41,993,456	40,377,351	37,591,173	38,073,050	38,121,554
Other assets	<u>8,058,387</u>	<u>5,783,685</u>	<u>4,613,399</u>	<u>4,556,943</u>	<u>5,703,537</u>
Total Assets	\$85,089,500	\$94,633,396	\$97,098,165	\$93,738,532	\$88,376,781
<u>Liabilities:</u>					
Long-Term Debt	\$ 360,838	\$ 423,715	\$ 6,618,246	\$ 6,953,516	\$ 7,270,334
Other	<u>9,758,925</u>	<u>8,318,069</u>	<u>8,314,592</u>	<u>10,017,807</u>	<u>8,536,508</u>
Total Liabilities	\$10,119,763	\$8,741,784	\$14,932,838	\$16,971,323	\$15,806,842
<u>Net Assets:</u>					
Unrestricted	\$65,019,519	\$77,217,866	\$76,200,619	\$70,909,949	\$67,141,731
Temporarily Restricted	1,478,170	1,352,224	808,945	1,018,992	984,343
Permanently Restricted	<u>8,472,048</u>	<u>7,321,522</u>	<u>5,155,763</u>	<u>4,838,268</u>	<u>4,443,865</u>
Total Net Assets	\$74,969,737	\$85,891,612	\$82,165,327	\$76,767,209	\$72,569,939

Endowment

The College has a Restricted Endowment Fund of approximately eight million dollars, the income from which is used to support the scholarship program. A Quasi-Endowment Fund, currently at approximately thirty-four million dollars, was created by the Board to allow for long-range planning while maintaining an appropriate level of fluidity. To date, all income from this fund has been returned to the fund, since the College has had no need to supplement its operating revenues.

College Fundraising

<u>Year</u>	<u># of Donors</u>	<u>Gifts/Grants</u>	<u>Special Events</u>	<u>Deferred Giving</u>	<u>Total Amount Raised</u>
2008-09	2,557	\$1,059,261	\$272,508	\$1,347,165	\$2,705,934
2007-08	2,653	1,214,171	318,992	1,148,634	2,681,797
2006-07	2,454	928,496	308,287	264,587	1,501,370
2005-06	2,446	1,025,006	279,085	137,185	1,441,276
2004-05	2,753	1,159,990	357,486	172,005	1,689,481

Alumni Relations & Special Events

St. Joseph's College is committed to the belief that its responsibility to its graduates never ends. There are Alumni Offices on both the Brooklyn and Long Island campuses. The mission of the Office of Alumni Relations is to identify and engage the College's more than 27,000 alumni and to create meaningful opportunities for them to participate in the life of St. Joseph's College. The Office of Alumni Relations works closely with the Alumni Association to help them connect with fellow alumni.

In conjunction with the Office of Alumni Relations, the Alumni Association sponsors special events, including lectures, mentoring, career services and reunions. The Alumni Association also provides grants to relatives of alumni. Alumni regularly receive the St. Joseph's College Magazine and the SJC Insider, a quarterly e-newsletter.

Special events continue to be viable activities, which generate funds for programs at the College on an annual basis. These events also help to foster and strengthen relationships with both the business and civic communities.

The Office of Special Events hosts two major fundraising events each year, the Annual Dinner Dance in the fall and the Golf Tournament in the spring. The Dinner Dance provides an opportunity for the College to present the Distinguished Citizen and the Outstanding Alumni Awards to exceptional friends and alumni. Each award is given in recognition of the commitment to education and service. All proceeds benefit student scholarships. Additionally, the Office of Special Events hosts the Annual Golf Tournament each spring to raise funds for the College's athletic programs.

St. Joseph's College Fund

The Department solicits alumni, friends, parents, faculty and staff for the St. Joseph's College Fund. Mail solicitations are sent annually. In addition, alumni phonathons are held at least three times a year and have been a successful means of reaching potential donors. A full-time grant writer is actively seeking government, foundation and corporate support for programs and projects at both campuses.

Major Gifts and Planned Giving

Initiatives to increase donations include the implementation of a Planned Giving Program and establishment in 1996 of a Pooled Income Fund managed by Merrill Lynch and in 2005 a Charitable Gift Annuity Program with Bank of America as the trustee. Advertising for the programs regularly appears in the St. Joseph's College Magazine. Targeted mailings are sent on a regular basis and every fundraising appeal contains information on the Planned Giving Program. The Aquinas Society was established in 1995 to recognize individuals who have included the College as a beneficiary through planned giving vehicles. An annual Aquinas Society dinner is held to acknowledge members of the Society.

LITIGATION

There are various claims and pending litigation to which the College is a party. The College believes, based upon the opinions of the counsel handling such matters, that they would not, individually or in the aggregate, materially affect the ability of the College to pay the principal of and interest on the Series 2010 Bonds when due or fulfill the College's obligations under the Loan Agreement.

PART 7 — THE AUTHORITY

Background, Purposes and Powers

The Authority is a body corporate and politic constituting a public benefit corporation. The Authority was created by the Act for the purpose of financing and constructing a variety of facilities for certain independent colleges and universities and private hospitals, certain not-for-profit institutions, public educational institutions including The State University of New York, The City University of New York and Boards of Cooperative Educational Services ("BOCES"), certain school districts in the State, facilities for the Departments of Health and Education of the State, the Office of General Services, the Office of General Services of the State on behalf of the Department of Audit and Control, facilities for the aged and certain judicial facilities for cities and counties. The Authority is also authorized to make and purchase certain loans in connection with its student loan program. To carry out this purpose, the Authority was given the authority, among other things, to issue and sell negotiable bonds and notes to finance the construction of facilities of such institutions, to issue bonds or notes to refund outstanding bonds or notes and to lend funds to such institutions.

On September 1, 1995, the Authority through State legislation (the "Consolidation Act") succeeded to the powers, duties and functions of the New York State Medical Care Facilities Finance Agency (the "Agency") and the Facilities Development Corporation (the "Corporation"), each of which will continue its corporate existence in and through the Authority. Under the Consolidation Act, the Authority has also acquired by operation of law all assets and property, and has assumed all the liabilities and obligations, of the Agency and the Corporation, including, without limitation, the obligation of the Agency to make payments on its outstanding bonds, and notes or other obligations. Under the Consolidation Act, as successor to the powers, duties and functions of the Agency, the Authority is authorized to issue and sell negotiable bonds and notes to finance and refinance mental health services facilities for use directly by the New York State Department of Mental Hygiene and by certain voluntary agencies. As such successor to the Agency, the Authority has acquired additional authorization to issue bonds and notes to provide certain types of financing for certain facilities for the Department of Health, not-for-profit corporations providing hospital, medical and residential health care facilities and services, county and municipal hospitals and nursing homes, not-for-profit and limited profit nursing home companies, qualified health maintenance organizations and health facilities for municipalities constituting social services districts. As successor to the Corporation, the Authority is authorized, among other things, to assume exclusive possession, jurisdiction, control and supervision over all State mental hygiene facilities and to make them available to the Department of Mental Hygiene, to provide for construction and modernization of municipal hospitals, to provide health facilities for municipalities, to provide health facilities for voluntary non-profit corporations, to make its services available to the State Department of Correctional Services, to make its services available to municipalities to provide for the design and construction of local correctional facilities, to provide services for the design and construction of municipal buildings, and to make loans to certain voluntary agencies with respect to mental hygiene facilities owned or leased by such agencies.

The Authority has the general power to acquire real and personal property, give mortgages, make contracts, operate dormitories and other facilities and fix and collect rentals or other charges for their use, contract with the holders of its bonds and notes as to such rentals and charges, make reasonable rules and regulations to assure the maximum use of facilities, borrow money, issue negotiable bonds or notes and provide for the rights of their holders and adopt a program of self-insurance.

In addition to providing financing, the Authority offers a variety of services to certain educational, governmental and not-for-profit institutions, including advising in the areas of project planning, design and construction, monitoring project construction, purchasing of furnishings and equipment for projects, designing interiors of projects and designing and managing projects to rehabilitate older facilities. In succeeding to the powers, duties and

functions of the Corporation as described above, the scope of design and construction services afforded by the Authority has been expanded.

Outstanding Indebtedness of the Authority (Other than Indebtedness Assumed by the Authority)

At June 30, 2010, the Authority had approximately \$42.7 billion aggregate principal amount of bonds and notes outstanding, excluding indebtedness of the Agency assumed by the Authority on September 1, 1995 pursuant to the Consolidation Act. The debt service on each such issue of the Authority’s bonds and notes is paid from moneys received by the Authority or the trustee from or on behalf of the entity having facilities financed with the proceeds from such issue or from borrowers in connection with its student loan program.

The Authority’s bonds and notes include both special obligations and general obligations of the Authority. The Authority’s special obligations are payable solely from payments required to be made by or for the account of the institution for which the particular special obligations were issued or from borrowers in connection with its student loan program. Such payments are pledged or assigned to the trustees for the holders of respective special obligations. The Authority has no obligation to pay its special obligations other than from such payments. The Authority’s general obligations are payable from any moneys of the Authority legally available for the payment of such obligations. However, the payments required to be made by or for the account of the institution for which general obligations were issued generally have been pledged or assigned by the Authority to trustees for the holders of such general obligations. The Authority has always paid the principal of and interest on its special and general obligations on time and in full.

The total amounts of the Authority bonds and notes (excluding debt of the Agency assumed by the Authority on September 1, 1995 pursuant to the Consolidation Act) outstanding at June 30, 2010 were as follows:

<u>Public Programs</u>	<u>Bonds Issued</u>	<u>Bonds Outstanding</u>	<u>Notes Outstanding</u>	<u>Bonds and Notes Outstanding</u>
State University of New York				
Dormitory Facilities.....	\$ 2,350,316,000	\$ 1,043,710,000	\$ 0	\$ 1,043,710,000
State University of New York Educational and Athletic Facilities.....	14,043,272,999	6,283,774,856	0	6,283,774,856
Upstate Community Colleges of the State University of New York.....	1,590,645,000	662,375,000	0	662,375,000
Senior Colleges of the City University of New York.....	10,262,671,762	3,346,519,213	0	3,346,519,213
Community Colleges of the City University of New York.....	2,444,968,350	542,365,787	0	542,365,787
BOCES and School Districts.....	2,771,681,208	2,168,100,000	0	2,168,100,000
Judicial Facilities.....	2,161,277,717	704,492,717	0	704,492,717
New York State Departments of Health and Education and Other.....	6,138,795,000	4,184,350,000	0	4,184,350,000
Mental Health Services Facilities.....	8,032,895,000	3,881,765,000	0	3,881,765,000
New York State Taxable Pension Bonds.....	773,475,000	0	0	0
Municipal Health Facilities				
Improvement Program.....	<u>1,116,660,000</u>	<u>761,120,000</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>761,120,000</u>
Totals Public Programs.....	<u>\$ 51,686,658,036</u>	<u>\$ 23,578,572,573</u>	<u>\$ 0</u>	<u>\$ 23,578,572,573</u>
<u>Non-Public Programs</u>	<u>Bonds Issued</u>	<u>Bonds Outstanding</u>	<u>Notes Outstanding</u>	<u>Bonds and Notes Outstanding</u>
Independent Colleges, Universities and Other Institutions.....	\$ 19,251,245,259	\$ 10,186,626,435	\$ 30,730,000	\$ 10,217,356,435
Voluntary Non-Profit Hospitals.....	14,434,254,309	8,005,120,000	0	8,005,120,000
Facilities for the Aged.....	2,010,975,000	873,025,000	0	873,025,000
Supplemental Higher Education Loan Financing Program.....	<u>95,000,000</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>
Totals Non-Public Programs.....	<u>\$ 35,791,474,568</u>	<u>\$ 19,064,771,435</u>	<u>\$ 30,730,000</u>	<u>\$ 19,095,501,435</u>
Grand Totals Bonds and Notes.....	<u>\$ 87,478,132,604</u>	<u>\$ 42,643,344,008</u>	<u>\$ 30,730,000</u>	<u>\$ 42,674,074,008</u>

Outstanding Indebtedness of the Agency Assumed by the Authority

At June 30, 2010, the Agency had approximately \$324.9 million aggregate principal amount of bonds outstanding, the obligations as to all of which have been assumed by the Authority. The debt service on each such issue of bonds is paid from moneys received by the Authority (as successor to the Agency) or the trustee from or on behalf of the entity having facilities financed with the proceeds from such issue.

The total amounts of the Agency's bonds (which indebtedness was assumed by the Authority on September 1, 1995) outstanding at June 30, 2010 were as follows:

Public Programs	Bonds Issued	Bonds Outstanding
Mental Health Services Improvement Facilities.....	\$ 3,817,230,725	\$ 0
Non-Public Programs	Bonds Issued	Bonds Outstanding
Hospital and Nursing Home Project Bond Program.....	\$ 226,230,000	\$ 2,880,000
Insured Mortgage Programs	6,625,079,927	314,970,000
Revenue Bonds, Secured Loan and Other Programs.....	<u>2,414,240,000</u>	<u>7,045,000</u>
Total Non-Public Programs.....	<u>\$ 9,265,549,927</u>	<u>\$ 324,895,000</u>
Total MCFFA Outstanding Debt.....	<u>\$ 13,082,780,652</u>	<u>\$ 324,895,000</u>

Governance

The Authority carries out its programs through an eleven-member board, a full-time staff of approximately 660 persons, independent bond counsel and other outside advisors. Board members include the Commissioner of Education of the State, the Commissioner of Health of the State, the State Comptroller or one member appointed by him or her who serves until his or her successor is appointed, the Director of the Budget of the State, one member appointed by the Temporary President of the State Senate, one member appointed by the Speaker of the State Assembly and five members appointed by the Governor, with the advice and consent of the Senate, for terms of three years. The Commissioner of Education of the State, the Commissioner of Health of the State and the Director of the Budget of the State each may appoint a representative to attend and vote at Authority meetings. The members of the Authority serve without compensation, but are entitled to reimbursement of expenses incurred in the performance of their duties.

The Governor of the State appoints a Chair from the members appointed by him or her and the members of the Authority annually choose the following officers, of which the first two must be members of the Authority: Vice-Chair, Secretary, Treasurer, Assistant Secretaries and Assistant Treasurers.

The current members of the Authority are as follows:

ALFONSO L. CARNEY, JR., *Chair*, New York.

Alfonso L. Carney, Jr. was appointed as a Member of the Authority by the Governor on May 20, 2009. Mr. Carney is a principal of Rockwood Partners, LLC, which provides medical and legal consulting services in New York City. Consulting for the firm in 2005, he served as Acting Chief Operating Officer and Corporate Secretary for the Goldman Sachs Foundation in New York where, working with the President of the Foundation, he directed overall staff management of the foundation, and provided strategic oversight of the administration, communications and legal affairs teams, and developed selected foundation program initiatives. Prior to this, Mr. Carney held several positions with Altria Corporate Services, Inc., most recently as Vice President and Associate General Counsel for Corporate and Government Affairs. Prior to that, Mr. Carney served as Assistant Secretary of Philip Morris Companies Inc. and Corporate Secretary of Philip Morris Management Corp. For eight years, Mr. Carney was Senior International Counsel first for General Foods Corporation and later for Kraft Foods, Inc. and previously served as Trade Regulation Counsel, Assistant Litigation Counsel and Federal Government Relations Counsel for General Foods, where he began his legal career in 1975 as a Division Attorney. Mr. Carney is a trustee of Trinity College, the University of Virginia Law School Foundation, the Riverdale Country School and the Virginia Museum of Fine Arts in Richmond. In addition, he is a trustee of the Burke Rehabilitation Hospital in White Plains. Mr. Carney holds a Bachelors degree in Philosophy from Trinity College and a Juris Doctor degree from the University of Virginia School of Law. His current term expires on March 31, 2013.

JOHN B. JOHNSON, JR., *Vice-Chair*, Watertown.

John B. Johnson, Jr. was appointed as a Member of the Authority by the Governor on June 20, 2007. Mr. Johnson is Chairman of the Board and Chief Executive Officer of the Johnson Newspaper Corporation, which publishes the Watertown Daily Times, Batavia Daily News, Malone Telegram, Catskill Daily Mail, Hudson Register Star, Ogdensburg Journal, Massena-Potsdam Courier Observer, seven weekly newspapers and three shopping newspapers. He is director of the New York Newspapers Foundation, a member of the Development Authority of the North Country and the Fort Drum Regional Liaison Committee, a trustee of Clarkson University and president of the Bugbee Housing Development Corporation. Mr. Johnson has been a member of the American Society of Newspaper Editors since 1978, and was a Pulitzer Prize juror in 1978, 1979, 2001 and 2002. He holds a Bachelor's degree from Vanderbilt University, and Master's degrees in Journalism and Business Administration from the Columbia University Graduate School of Journalism and Business. Mr. Johnson was awarded an Honorary Doctor of Science degree from Clarkson University. Mr. Johnson's term expires on March 31, 2013.

JACQUES JIHA, Ph.D., *Secretary*, Woodbury.

Jacques Jiha was appointed as a Member of the Authority by the Governor on December 15, 2008. Mr. Jiha is the Executive Vice President / Chief Operating Officer & Chief Financial Officer of Black Enterprise, a multi-media company with properties in print, digital media, television, events and the internet. He is a member of the Investment Advisory Committee of the New York Common Retirement Fund. Previously, Mr. Jiha served as Deputy Comptroller for Pension Investment and Public Finance in the Office of the New York State Comptroller. As the state's chief investment officer, he managed assets valued at \$120 billion and was also in charge of all activities related to the issuance of New York State general obligation bonds, bond anticipation notes, tax and revenue anticipation notes, and certificates of participation. Mr. Jiha was the Co-Executive Director of the New York State Local Government Assistance Corporation (LGAC) in charge of the sale of refunding bonds, the ratification of swap agreements, and the selection of financial advisors and underwriters. Prior thereto, Mr. Jiha was Nassau County Deputy Comptroller for Audits and Finances. He also worked for the New York City Office of the Comptroller in increasingly responsible positions: first as Chief Economist and later as Deputy Comptroller for Budget. Earlier, Mr. Jiha served as Executive Director of the New York State Legislative Tax Study Commission and as Principal Economist for the New York State Assembly Committee on Ways and Means. He holds a Ph.D. and a Master's degree in Economics from the New School University and a Bachelor's degree in Economics from Fordham University. His current term expires on March 31, 2011.

CHARLES G. MOERDLER, Esq., New York.

Charles Moerdler was appointed as a Member of the Authority by the Governor on March 16, 2010. Mr. Moerdler is a founding partner in the Litigation Practice of the law firm Stroock & Stroock & Lavan LLP. His areas of practice include defamation, antitrust, securities, real estate, class actions, health care, international law, labor law, administrative law and zoning. Mr. Moerdler also specializes in State and Federal appellate practice. He served as Commissioner of Housing and Buildings of the City of New York, as a real estate and development consultant to New York City Mayor John Lindsay, as a member of the City's Air Pollution Control Board, and as Chairman and Commissioner of the New York State Insurance Fund. Mr. Moerdler currently serves on the Board of Directors of the New York City Housing Development Corporation and as a member of the New York City Board of Collective Bargaining. He holds a Bachelors of Arts degree from Long Island University and a Juris Doctor degree from Fordham University. His current term expires on March 31, 2012.

ANTHONY B. MARTINO, CPA, Buffalo.

Mr. Martino was appointed as a Member of the Authority by the Governor on December 15, 2008. A certified public accountant with more than 37 years of experience, Mr. Martino is a retired partner of the Buffalo CPA firm Lumsden & McCormick, LLP. He began his career at Price Waterhouse where he worked in the firm's Buffalo and Washington, DC, offices. Mr. Martino is a member of the American Institute of CPAs and the New York State Society of CPAs. Long involved in community organizations, he serves on the boards of the Buffalo Niagara Medical Campus as Vice Chairman, Mount Calvary Cemetery as Chair of the Investment Committee, Cradle Beach Camp of which he is a former Chair, the Kelly for Kids Foundation and Key Bank. Mr. Martino received a Bachelor of Science degree in accounting from the University at Buffalo. Mr. Martino's current term expires on August 31, 2010.

SANDRA M. SHAPARD, Delmar.

Ms. Shapard was appointed as a Member of the Authority by the State Comptroller on January 21, 2003. Ms. Shapard served as Deputy Comptroller for the Office of the State Comptroller from January, 1995 until her retirement in 2001, during which time she headed the Office of Fiscal Research and Policy Analysis and twice served as Acting First Deputy Comptroller. Previously, Ms. Shapard held the positions of Deputy Director and First Deputy Director for the New York State Division of Budget, from 1991 to 1994, and Deputy Assistant Commissioner for Transit for the State Department of Transportation, from 1988 to 1991. She began her career in New York State government with the Assembly in 1975 where, over a thirteen year period, she held the positions of Staff Director of the Office of Counsel to the Majority, Special Assistant to the Speaker, and Deputy Director of Budget Studies for the Committee on Ways and Means. Ms. Shapard also served as Assistant to the County Executive in Dutchess County. A graduate of Mississippi University for Women, Ms. Shapard received a Masters of Public Administration from Harvard University, John F. Kennedy School of Government, where she has served as visiting lecturer, and has completed graduate work at Vanderbilt University.

GERARD ROMSKI, Esq., Mount Kisco.

Mr. Romski was appointed as a Member of the Authority by the Temporary President of the State Senate on June 8, 2009. He is Counsel and Project Executive for “Arverne By The Sea,” where he is responsible for advancing and overseeing all facets of “Arverne by the Sea,” one of New York City’s largest mixed-use developments located in Queens, NY. Mr. Romski is also of counsel to the New York City law firm of Bauman, Katz and Grill LLP. He formerly was a partner in the law firm of Ross & Cohen, LLP (now merged with Duane Morris, LLP) for twelve years, handling all aspects of real estate and construction law for various clients. He previously served as Assistant Division Chief for the New York City Law Department’s Real Estate Litigation Division where he managed all aspects of litigation arising from real property owned by The City of New York. Mr. Romski is a member of the Urban Land Institute, Council of Development Finance Agencies, the New York State Bar Association, American Bar Association and New York City Bar Association. He previously served as a member of the New York City Congestion Mitigation Commission and the Board of Directors for the Bronx Red Cross. Mr. Romski holds a Bachelor of Arts degree from the New York Institute of Technology and a Juris Doctor degree from Brooklyn Law School.

ROMAN B. HEDGES, Ph.D., Delmar.

Dr. Hedges was appointed as a Member of the Authority by the Speaker of the State Assembly on February 24, 2003. Dr. Hedges serves on the Legislative Advisory Task Force on Demographic Research and Reapportionment. He is the former Deputy Secretary of the New York State Assembly Committee on Ways and Means. Dr. Hedges previously served as the Director of Fiscal Studies of the Assembly Committee on Ways and Means. He was an Associate Professor of Political Science and Public Policy at the State University of New York at Albany where he taught graduate and undergraduate courses in American politics, research methodology, and public policy. Dr. Hedges holds a Doctor of Philosophy and a Master of Arts degree from the University of Rochester and a Bachelor of Arts degree from Knox College.

DAVID M. STEINER, Ph.D., *Commissioner of Education of the State of New York, Albany; ex-officio.*

David M. Steiner was appointed by the Board of Regents as President of the University of the State of New York and Commissioner of Education on October 1, 2009. Prior to his appointment, Dr. Steiner served as the Klara and Larry Silverstein Dean of the School of Education at Hunter College CUNY. Prior to his time with Hunter College, Dr. Steiner served as Director of Arts Education at the National Endowment for the Arts and Chairman of the Department of Education Policy at Boston University. As Commissioner of Education, Dr. Steiner serves as chief executive officer of the Board of Regents, which has jurisdiction over the State’s entire educational system, which includes public and non-public elementary, middle and secondary education; public and independent colleges and universities; museums, libraries and historical societies and archives; the vocational rehabilitation system; and responsibility for licensing, practice and oversight of numerous professions. He holds a Doctor of Philosophy in political science from Harvard University and a Bachelor of Arts and Master of Arts degree in philosophy, politics and economics from Balliol College at Oxford University.

RICHARD F. DAINES, M.D., *Commissioner of Health, Albany; ex-officio.*

Richard F. Daines, M.D., became Commissioner of Health on March 21, 2007. Prior to his appointment he served as President and CEO at St. Luke’s-Roosevelt Hospital Center since 2002. Before joining St. Luke’s-Roosevelt Hospital Center as Medical Director in 2000, Dr. Daines served as Senior Vice President for Professional Affairs of St. Barnabas Hospital in the Bronx, New York since 1994 and as Medical Director from 1987 to 1999.

Dr. Daines received a Bachelor of History degree from Utah State University in 1974 and served as a missionary for the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints in Bolivia, 1970-1972. He received his medical degree from Cornell University Medical College in 1978. He served a residency in internal medicine at New York Hospital and is Board Certified in Internal Medicine and Critical Care Medicine.

ROBERT L. MEGNA, *Budget Director of the State of New York, Albany; ex-officio.*

Mr. Megna was appointed Budget Director on June 15, 2009. He is responsible for the overall development and management of the State's fiscal policy, including overseeing the preparation of budget recommendations for all State agencies and programs, economic and revenue forecasting, tax policy, fiscal planning, capital financing and management of the State's debt portfolio, as well as pensions and employee benefits. Mr. Megna previously served as Commissioner of the New York State Department of Taxation and Finance, responsible for overseeing the collection and accounting of more than \$90 billion in State and local taxes, the administration of State and local taxes, including New York City and the City of Yonkers income taxes and the processing of tax returns, registrations and associated documents. Prior to this he served as head of the Economic and Revenue Unit of the New York State Division of the Budget where he was responsible for State Budget revenue projections and the development and monitoring of the State Financial Plan. Mr. Megna was Assistant Commissioner for Tax Policy for the Commonwealth of Virginia. He also served as Director of Tax Studies for the New York State Department of Taxation and Finance and as Deputy Director of Fiscal Studies for the Ways and Means Committee of the New York State Assembly. Mr. Megna was also an economist for AT&T. He holds Masters degrees in Public Policy from Fordham University and Economics from the London School of Economics.

The principal staff of the Authority is as follows:

PAUL T. WILLIAMS, JR. is the President and chief executive officer of the Authority. Mr. Williams is responsible for the overall management of the Authority's administration and operations. He most recently served as Senior Counsel in the law firm of Nixon Peabody LLP. Prior to working at Nixon Peabody, Mr. Williams helped to establish a boutique Wall Street investment banking company. Prior thereto, Mr. Williams was a partner in, and then of counsel to, the law firm of Bryan Cave LLP. He was a founding partner in the law firm of Wood, Williams, Rafalsky & Harris, which included a practice in public finance and served there from 1984-1998. Mr. Williams began his career as an associate at the law firm of Walker & Bailey in 1977 and thereafter served as a counsel to the New York State Assembly. Mr. Williams is licensed to practice law in the State of New York and holds professional licenses in the securities industry. He holds a Bachelor's degree from Yale University and a Juris Doctor degree from Columbia University School of Law.

MICHAEL T. CORRIGAN is the Vice President of the Authority, and assists the President in the administration and operation of the Authority. Mr. Corrigan came to the Authority in 1995 as Budget Director, and served as Deputy Chief Financial Officer from 2000 until 2003. He began his government service career in 1983 as a budget analyst for Rensselaer County, and served as the County's Budget Director from 1986 to 1995. Immediately before coming to the Authority, he served as the appointed Rensselaer County Executive for a short period. Mr. Corrigan holds a Bachelor's degree in Economics from the State University of New York at Plattsburgh and a Master's degree in Business Administration from the University of Massachusetts.

PORTIA LEE is the Managing Director of Public Finance and Portfolio Monitoring. She is responsible for supervising and directing Authority bond issuance in the capital markets, through financial feasibility analysis and financing structure determination for Authority clients; as well as implementing and overseeing financing programs, including interest rate exchange and similar agreements; overseeing the Authority's compliance with continuing disclosure requirements and monitoring the financial condition of existing Authority clients. Ms. Lee previously served as Senior Investment Officer at the New York State Comptroller's Office where she was responsible for assisting in the administration of the long-term fixed income portfolio of the New York State Common Retirement Fund, as well as the short-term portfolio, and the Securities Lending Program. From 1995 to 2005, Ms. Lee worked at Moody's Investors Service where she most recently served as Vice President and Senior Credit Officer in the Public Finance Housing Group. In addition, Ms. Lee has extensive public service experience working for over 10 years in various positions in the Governor's Office, NYS Department of Social Services, as well as the New York State Assembly. She holds a Bachelor's degree from the State University of New York at Albany.

PAUL W. KUTEY is the Chief Financial Officer of the Authority. Mr. Kutey oversees and directs the activities of the Office of Finance and Information Services. He is responsible for supervising the Authority's investment program, accounting functions, operation, maintenance and development of computer hardware, software and communications infrastructure; as well as the development and implementation of financial policies, financial

management systems and internal controls for financial reporting. Previously, Mr. Kutey was Senior Vice President of Finance and Operations for AYCO Company, L.P., a Goldman Sachs Company, where his responsibilities included finance, operations and facilities management. Prior to joining AYCO Company, he served as Corporate Controller and Acting Chief Financial Officer for First Albany Companies, Inc. From 1982 until 2001, Mr. Kutey held increasingly responsible positions with PricewaterhouseCoopers, LLP, becoming Partner in 1993. He is a Certified Public Accountant and holds a Bachelor of Business Administration degree from Siena College.

JEFFREY M. POHL is General Counsel to the Authority. Mr. Pohl is responsible for all legal services including legislation, litigation, contract matters and the legal aspects of all Authority financings. He is a member of the New York State Bar, and most recently served as a counsel in the public finance group of a large New York law firm. Mr. Pohl had previously served in various capacities in State government with the Office of the State Comptroller and the New York State Senate. He holds a Bachelor's degree from Franklin and Marshall College and a Juris Doctor degree from Albany Law School of Union University.

STEPHEN D. CURRO, P.E. is the Managing Director of Construction. In that capacity, he is responsible for the Authority's construction groups, including design, project management, purchasing, contract administration, interior design, and engineering and other technology services. Mr. Curro joined the Authority in 2001 as Director of Technical Services, and most recently served as Director of Construction Support Services. He is a registered Professional Engineer in New York and Rhode Island and has worked in the construction industry for over 20 years as a consulting structural engineer and a technology solutions provider. Mr. Curro is also an Adjunct Professor at Hudson Valley Community College and Bryant & Stratton College. He holds a Bachelor of Science in Civil Engineering from the University of Rhode Island, a Master of Engineering in Structural Engineering from Rensselaer Polytechnic Institute and a Master of Business Administration from Rensselaer Polytechnic Institute's Lally School of Management.

CARRA WALLACE is the Managing Director of the Office of Executive Initiatives (OEI). In that capacity, she oversees the Authority's Communications and Marketing, Opportunity Programs, Environmental Initiatives, Client Outreach, Training, Executive Projects, and Legislative Affairs units. Ms. Wallace is responsible for strategic efforts in developing programs, maximizing the utilization of Minority and Women Owned Businesses, and communicating with Authority clients, the public and governmental officials. She possesses more than twenty years of senior leadership experience in diverse private sector businesses and civic organizations. Ms. Wallace most recently served as Executive Vice President at Telwares, a major telecommunications service firm. Prior to her service at Telwares, Ms. Wallace served as Executive Vice President of External Affairs at the NYC Leadership Academy. She holds a Bachelor of Science degree in management from the Pepperdine University Graziadio School of Business and Management.

Claims and Litigation

Although certain claims and litigation have been asserted or commenced against the Authority, the Authority believes that these claims and litigation are covered by the Authority's insurance or by bonds filed with the Authority should the Authority be held liable in any of such matters, or that the Authority has sufficient funds available or the legal power and ability to seek sufficient funds to meet any such claims or judgments resulting from such litigation.

Other Matters

New York State Public Authorities Control Board

The New York State Public Authorities Control Board (the "PACB") has authority to approve the financing and construction of any new or reactivated projects proposed by the Authority and certain other public authorities of the State. The PACB approves the proposed new projects only upon its determination that there are commitments of funds sufficient to finance the acquisition and construction of the projects. The Authority has obtained the approval of the PACB for the issuance of the Series 2010 Bonds.

Legislation

From time to time, bills are introduced into the State Legislature which, if enacted into law, would affect the Authority and its operations. The Authority is not able to represent whether such bills will be introduced or become law in the future. In addition, the State undertakes periodic studies of public authorities in the State (including the

Authority) and their financing programs. Any of such periodic studies could result in proposed legislation which, if adopted, would affect the Authority and its operations.

Environmental Quality Review

The Authority complies with the New York State Environmental Quality Review Act and with the New York State Historic Preservation Act of 1980, and the respective regulations promulgated thereunder respecting the Project to the extent such acts and regulations are applicable.

Independent Auditors

The accounting firm of KPMG LLP audited the financial statements of the Authority for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2010. Copies of the most recent audited financial statements are available upon request at the offices of the Authority.

PART 8 — LEGALITY OF THE SERIES 2010 BONDS FOR INVESTMENT AND DEPOSIT

Under New York State law, the Series 2010 Bonds are securities in which all public officers and bodies of the State and all municipalities and municipal subdivisions, all insurance companies and associations, all savings banks and savings institutions, including savings and loan associations, administrators, guardians, executors, trustees, committees, conservators and other fiduciaries in the State may properly and legally invest funds in their control.

The Series 2010 Bonds may be deposited with the State Comptroller to secure deposits of State moneys in banks, trust companies and industrial banks.

PART 9 — NEGOTIABLE INSTRUMENTS

The Series 2010 Bonds are negotiable instruments as provided in the Act, subject to the provisions for registration and transfer contained in the Resolution and in the Series 2010 Bonds.

PART 10 — TAX MATTERS

In the opinion of Squire, Sanders & Dempsey L.L.P., Bond Counsel, under existing law: (i) interest on the Series 2010 Bonds is excluded from gross income for federal income tax purposes under Section 103 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended (the “Code”), and is not an item of tax preference for purposes of the federal alternative minimum tax imposed on individuals and corporations; and (ii) interest on the Series 2010 Bonds is exempt from personal income taxes imposed by the State of New York and political subdivisions thereof, including The City of New York and the City of Yonkers.

The opinion on tax matters will be based on and will assume the accuracy of certain representations and certifications, and continuing compliance with certain covenants, of the Authority and the College contained in the transcript of proceedings and that are intended to evidence and assure the foregoing, including that the Series 2010 Bonds are and will remain obligations the interest on which is excluded from gross income for federal income tax purposes. Bond Counsel will not independently verify the accuracy of the Authority’s certifications and representations or the continuing compliance with the Authority’s covenants.

The opinion of Bond Counsel is based on current legal authority and covers certain matters not directly addressed by such authority. It represents Bond Counsel’s legal judgment as to exclusion of interest on the Series 2010 Bonds from gross income for federal income tax purposes but is not a guaranty of that conclusion. The opinion is not binding on the Internal Revenue Service (“IRS”) or any court. Bond Counsel expresses no opinion about (i) the effect of future changes in the Code and the applicable regulations under the Code or (ii) the interpretation and the enforcement of the Code or those regulations by the IRS.

The Code prescribes a number of qualifications and conditions for the interest on state and local government obligations to be and to remain excluded from gross income for federal income tax purposes, some of which require future or continued compliance after issuance of the obligations. Noncompliance with these requirements by the Authority or the College may cause loss of such status and result in the interest on the Series 2010 Bonds being included in gross income for federal income tax purposes retroactively to the date of issuance of the Series 2010 Bonds. The College and, subject to certain limitations, the Authority have each covenanted to take the actions

required of it for the interest on the Series 2010 Bonds to be and to remain excluded from gross income for federal income tax purposes, and not to take any actions that would adversely affect that exclusion. After the date of issuance of the Series 2010 Bonds, Bond Counsel will not undertake to determine (or to so inform any person) whether any actions taken or not taken, or any events occurring or not occurring, or any other matters coming to Bond Counsel's attention, may adversely affect the exclusion from gross income for federal income tax purposes of interest on the Series 2010 Bonds or the market value of the Series 2010 Bonds.

Under the Code, interest on the Series 2010 Bonds is excluded from the calculation of a corporation's adjusted current earnings for purposes of the corporate alternative minimum tax, but interest on the Series 2010 Bonds may be subject to a branch profits tax imposed on certain foreign corporations doing business in the United States and to a tax imposed on excess net passive income of certain S corporations. Under the Code, the exclusion of interest from gross income for federal income tax purposes may have certain adverse federal income tax consequences on items of income, deduction or credit for certain taxpayers, including financial institutions, certain insurance companies, recipients of Social Security and Railroad Retirement benefits, those that are deemed to incur or continue indebtedness to acquire or carry tax-exempt obligations, and individuals otherwise eligible for the earned income tax credit. The applicability and extent of these and other tax consequences will depend upon the particular tax status or other tax items of the owner of the Series 2010 Bonds. Bond Counsel will express no opinion regarding those consequences.

Payments of interest on tax-exempt obligations, including the Series 2010 Bonds, are generally subject to IRS Form 1099-INT information reporting requirements. If a Series 2010 Bond owner is subject to backup withholding under those requirements, then payments of interest will also be subject to backup withholding. Those requirements do not affect the exclusion of such interest from gross income for federal income tax purposes.

Legislation affecting tax-exempt obligations is regularly considered by the United States Congress and may also be considered by the State legislature. Court proceedings may also be filed the outcome of which could modify the tax treatment of obligations such as the Series 2010 Bonds. There can be no assurance that legislation enacted or proposed, or actions by a court, after the date of issuance of the Series 2010 Bonds will not have an adverse effect on the tax status of interest on the Series 2010 Bonds or the market value of the Series 2010 Bonds.

Prospective purchasers of the Series 2010 Bonds should consult their own tax advisers regarding pending or proposed federal and state tax legislation and court proceedings, and prospective purchasers of the Series 2010 Bonds at other than their original issuance at the respective prices indicated on the cover of this Official Statement should also consult their own tax advisers regarding other tax considerations such as the consequences of market discount, as to all of which Bond Counsel expresses no opinion.

Bond Counsel's engagement with respect to the Series 2010 Bonds ends with the issuance of the Series 2010 Bonds, and, unless separately engaged, Bond Counsel is not obligated to defend the Authority, the College or the owners of the Series 2010 Bonds regarding the tax status of interest thereon in the event of an audit examination by the IRS. The IRS has a program to audit tax-exempt obligations to determine whether the interest thereon is includible in gross income for federal income tax purposes. If the IRS does audit the Series 2010 Bonds, under current IRS procedures, the IRS will treat the Authority as the taxpayer and the beneficial owners of the Series 2010 Bonds will have only limited rights, if any, to obtain and participate in judicial review of such audit. Any action of the IRS, including but not limited to selection of the Series 2010 Bonds for audit, or the course or result of such audit, or an audit of other obligations presenting similar tax issues, may affect the market value of the Series 2010 Bonds.

Original Issue Discount and Original Issue Premium

Certain of the Series 2010 Bonds ("Discount Bonds") as indicated on the cover of this Official Statement were offered and sold to the public at an original issue discount ("OID"). OID is the excess of the stated redemption price at maturity (the principal amount) over the "issue price" of a Discount Bond. The issue price of a Discount Bond is the initial offering price to the public (other than to bond houses, brokers or similar persons acting in the capacity of underwriters or wholesalers) at which a substantial amount of the Discount Bonds of the same maturity is sold pursuant to that offering. For federal income tax purposes, OID accrues to the owner of a Discount Bond over the period to maturity based on the constant yield method, compounded semiannually (or over a shorter permitted compounding interval selected by the owner). The portion of OID that accrues during the period of ownership of a Discount Bond (i) is interest excluded from the owner's gross income for federal income tax purposes to the same extent, and subject to the same considerations discussed above, as other interest on the Series 2010 Bonds, and (ii) is

added to the owner's tax basis for purposes of determining gain or loss on the maturity, redemption, prior sale or other disposition of that Discount Bond. A purchaser of a Discount Bond in the initial public offering at the price for that Discount Bond stated on the cover of this Official Statement who holds that Discount Bond to maturity will realize no gain or loss upon the retirement of that Discount Bond.

Certain of the Series 2010 Bonds ("Premium Bonds") as indicated on the cover of this Official Statement were offered and sold to the public at a price in excess of their stated redemption price (the principal amount) at maturity. That excess constitutes bond premium. For federal income tax purposes, bond premium is amortized over the period to maturity of a Premium Bond, based on the yield to maturity of that Premium Bond (or, in the case of a Premium Bond callable prior to its stated maturity, the amortization period and yield may be required to be determined on the basis of an earlier call date that results in the lowest yield on that Premium Bond), compounded semiannually. No portion of that bond premium is deductible by the owner of a Premium Bond. For purposes of determining the owner's gain or loss on the sale, redemption (including redemption at maturity) or other disposition of a Premium Bond, the owner's tax basis in the Premium Bond is reduced by the amount of bond premium that is amortized during the period of ownership. As a result, an owner may realize taxable gain for federal income tax purposes from the sale or other disposition of a Premium Bond for an amount equal to or less than the amount paid by the owner for that Premium Bond. A purchaser of a Premium Bond in the initial public offering at the price for that Premium Bond stated on the cover of this Official Statement who holds that Premium Bond to maturity (or, in the case of a callable Premium Bond, to its earlier call date that results in the lowest yield on that Premium Bond) will realize no gain or loss upon the retirement of that Premium Bond.

Owners of Discount and Premium Bonds should consult their own tax advisers as to the determination for federal income tax purposes of the amount of OID or bond premium properly accruable or amortizable in any period with respect to the Discount or Premium Bonds and as to other federal tax consequences and the treatment of OID and bond premium for purposes of state and local taxes on, or based on, income.

PART 11 — STATE NOT LIABLE ON THE SERIES 2010 BONDS

The Act provides that notes and bonds of the Authority are not a debt of the State, that the State is not liable on them and that such notes and bonds are not payable out of any funds other than those of the Authority. The Resolution specifically provides that the Series 2010 Bonds are not a debt of the State and that the State is not liable on them.

PART 12 — COVENANT BY THE STATE

The Act states that the State pledges and agrees with the holders of the Authority's notes and bonds that the State will not limit or alter the rights vested in the Authority to provide projects, to establish and collect rentals therefrom and to fulfill agreements with the holders of the Authority's notes and bonds or in any way impair the rights and remedies of the holders of such notes or bonds until such notes or bonds and interest thereon and all costs and expenses in connection with any action or proceeding by or on behalf of the holders of such notes or bonds are fully met and discharged. Notwithstanding the State's pledges and agreements contained in the Act, the State may in the exercise of its sovereign power enact or amend its laws which, if determined to be both reasonable and necessary to serve an important public purpose, could have the effect of impairing these pledges and agreements with the Authority and with the holders of the Authority's notes or bonds.

PART 13 — LEGAL MATTERS

Certain legal matters incidental to the authorization and issuance of the Series 2010 Bonds by the Authority are subject to the approval of Squire, Sanders & Dempsey L.L.P., Bond Counsel, whose approving opinion will be delivered with the Series 2010 Bonds. The proposed form of Bond Counsel's opinion is set forth in Appendix E hereto.

Certain legal matters will be passed upon for the College by its Counsel, Kelley Drye and Warren, LLP. Certain legal matters will be passed upon for the Underwriter by its counsel, Akerman Senterfitt LLP, New York, New York.

There is not now pending any litigation restraining or enjoining the issuance or delivery of the Series 2010 Bonds or questioning or affecting the validity of the Series 2010 Bonds or the proceedings and authority under which they are to be issued.

PART 14 — UNDERWRITING

Roosevelt & Cross, Incorporated has agreed, subject to certain conditions, to purchase the Series 2010 Bonds from the Authority at an aggregate purchase price of \$27,888,242, being the par amount of the Series 2010 Bonds, plus net original issue premium of \$262,516, and less the Underwriter's discount of \$169,274, and to make a public offering of Series 2010 Bonds at prices that are not in excess of the public offering prices stated on the cover page of this Official Statement. The Underwriter will be obligated to purchase all such Series 2010 Bonds if any are purchased.

The Series 2010 Bonds may be offered and sold to certain dealers (including the Underwriter) at prices lower than such public offering prices, and such public offering prices may be changed, from time to time, by the Underwriter.

PART 15 — CONTINUING DISCLOSURE

In order to assist the Underwriter in complying with Rule 15c2-12 promulgated by the Securities and Exchange Commission under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 as amended ("Rule 15c2-12"), the College has undertaken in a written agreement (the "Continuing Disclosure Agreement") for the benefit of the Bondholders to provide to Digital Assurance Certification LLC ("DAC"), on behalf of the Authority as the Authority's disclosure dissemination agent, on or before 120 days after the end of each fiscal year, commencing with the fiscal year of the College ending June 30, 2010, for filing by DAC with the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board ("MSRB") and its Electronic Municipal Market Access system for municipal securities disclosures, on an annual basis, operating data and financial information of the type hereinafter described which is included in "PART 6 - THE COLLEGE" of this Official Statement (the "Annual Information"), together with the College's annual financial statements prepared in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America and audited by an independent firm of certified public accountants in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America; provided, however, that if audited financial statements are not then available, unaudited financial statements shall be delivered to DAC for delivery to the MSRB.

If, and only if, and to the extent that it receives the Annual Information and annual financial statements described above from the College, DAC has undertaken in the Continuing Disclosure Agreement, on behalf of and as agent for the College and the Authority, to file such information and financial statements, as promptly as practicable, but no later than three business days after receipt of the information by DAC from the College, with the MSRB.

The College also will undertake in the Continuing Disclosure Agreement to provide to the Authority, the Trustee and DAC, in a timely manner, the notices required to be provided by Rule 15c2-12 and described below (the "Notices"). In addition, the Authority and the Trustee have undertaken, for the benefit of the Bondholders, to provide such Notices to DAC, should the Authority have actual knowledge of the occurrence of a Notice Event (as hereinafter defined). Upon receipt of Notices from the College, the Trustee or the Authority, DAC will file the Notices with the MSRB in a timely manner. With respect to the Series 2010 Bonds, DAC has only the duties specifically set forth in the Continuing Disclosure Agreement. DAC's obligation to deliver the information at the times and with the contents described in the Continuing Disclosure Agreement is limited to the extent the College has provided such information to DAC as required by the Continuing Disclosure Agreement. DAC has no duty with respect to the content of any disclosure or Notices made pursuant to the terms of the Continuing Disclosure Agreement and DAC has no duty or obligation to review or verify any information contained in the Annual Information, Audited Financial Statements, Notices or any other information, disclosures or notices provided to it by the College, the Trustee or the Authority and shall not be deemed to be acting in any fiduciary capacity for the Authority, the College, the Holders of the Series 2010 Bonds or any other party. DAC has no responsibility for the failure of the Authority to provide to DAC a Notice required by the Continuing Disclosure Agreement or duty to determine the materiality thereof. DAC shall have no duty to determine or liability for failing to determine whether the College, the Trustee or the Authority has complied with the Continuing Disclosure Agreement and DAC may conclusively rely upon certifications of the College, the Trustee and the Authority with respect to their respective

obligations under the Continuing Disclosure Agreement. In the event the obligations of DAC as the Authority's disclosure dissemination agent terminate, the Authority will either appoint a successor disclosure dissemination agent or, alternatively, assume all responsibilities of the disclosure dissemination agent for the benefit of the Bondholders.

The Annual Information will consist of the following: (a) operating data and financial information of the type included in this Official Statement in "PART 6 - THE COLLEGE" under the headings "OPERATING INFORMATION" and "ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENT INFORMATION" relating to: (1) *student admissions*, similar to that set forth under the heading "Admissions"; (2) *student enrollment*, similar to that set forth under the heading "Enrollment"; (3) *tuition and other student charges*, similar to that set forth under the heading "Student Charges"; (4) *financial aid*, similar to that set forth under the heading "Student Financial Aid;" (5) *faculty*, similar to that set forth under the heading "Faculty"; (6) *employee relations*, including material information about union contracts and, unless such information is included in the audited financial statements of the College, post retirement benefits and pension plans; (7) *restricted and designated net assets and investments and cash equivalents*, unless such information is included in the audited financial statements of the College; (8) *investment in plant*, unless such information is included in the audited financial statements of the College; and (9) *outstanding long-term indebtedness*, unless such information is included in the audited financial statements of the College; together with (b) a narrative explanation, if necessary to avoid misunderstanding and to assist the reader in understanding the presentation of financial and operating data concerning the College and in judging the financial and operating condition of the College.

The Notices include notices of any of the following events (the "Notice Events") with respect to the Series 2010 Bonds, if material: (1) principal and interest payment delinquencies; (2) non-payment related defaults; (3) unscheduled draws on debt service reserves reflecting financial difficulties; (4) unscheduled draws on credit enhancements reflecting financial difficulties; (5) substitution of credit or liquidity providers, or their failure to perform; (6) adverse tax opinions or events affecting the tax-exempt status of the Series 2010 Bonds; (7) modifications to the rights of holders of the Series 2010 Bonds; (8) bond calls; (9) defeasances; (10) release, substitution, or sale of property securing repayment of the Series 2010 Bonds; and (11) rating changes. In addition, DAC will undertake, for the benefit of the Holders of the Series 2010 Bonds, to provide to the MSRB, in a timely manner, notice of any failure by the College to provide the Annual Information and annual financial statements by the date required in the College's undertaking described above.

The sole and exclusive remedy for breach or default under the Continuing Disclosure Agreement described above is an action to compel specific performance of the undertaking of DAC, the College, the Trustee and/or the Authority, and no person, including any Holder of the Series 2010 Bonds, may recover monetary damages thereunder under any circumstances. The Authority or the College may be compelled to comply with their respective obligations under the Continuing Disclosure Agreement (i) in the case of enforcement of their obligations to provide information required thereunder, by any Holder of Outstanding Series 2010 Bonds or by the Trustee on behalf of the Holders of Outstanding Series 2010 Bonds, or (ii) in the case of challenges to the adequacy of the information provided, by the Trustee on behalf of the Holders of the Series 2010 Bonds; provided, however, that the Trustee is not required to take any enforcement action except at the direction of the Holders of not less than 25% in aggregate principal amount of Series 2010 Bonds at the time Outstanding. A breach or default under the Continuing Disclosure Agreement shall not constitute an Event of Default under the Resolution, the Series 2010 Resolutions or the Loan Agreement. In addition, if all or any part of Rule 15c2-12 ceases to be in effect for any reason, then the information required to be provided under the Continuing Disclosure Agreement, insofar as the provision of Rule 15c2-12 no longer in effect required the providing of such information, shall no longer be required to be provided.

The foregoing undertaking is intended to set forth a general description of the type of financial information and operating data that will be provided; the description is not intended to state more than general categories of financial information and operating data; and where an undertaking calls for information that no longer can be generated or is no longer relevant because the operations to which it related have been materially changed or discontinued, a statement to that effect will be provided. The Continuing Disclosure Agreement, however, may be amended or modified without consent of the Holders of the Series 2010 Bonds under certain circumstances set forth therein. Copies of the Continuing Disclosure Agreement when executed by the parties thereto upon the delivery of the Series 2010 Bonds will be on file at the principal office of the Authority.

In the past five years, the College has not failed to comply, in any material respects, with any previous continuing disclosure undertaking entered into in connection with any tax-exempt offerings.

PART 16 — RATINGS

Moody's Investors Service ("Moody's") has assigned its rating of Baa1 to the Bonds. Such rating reflect only the views of Moody's and any desired explanation of the significance of such rating (and any outlook) should be obtained from the rating agency at the following address: Moody's, 7 World Trade Center, 250 Greenwich Street, New York, New York 10007. There is no assurance that such rating will prevail for any given period of time or that it will not be revised downward or withdrawn entirely by Moody's if, in the judgment of such rating agency, circumstances so warrant. Any such downward revision or withdrawal of such rating may have an adverse effect on the market price of the Series 2010 Bonds.

PART 17 — MISCELLANEOUS

Reference in this Official Statement to the Act, the Resolutions and the Loan Agreement do not purport to be complete. Refer to the Act, the Resolutions and the Loan Agreement for full and complete details of their provisions. Copies of the Resolutions and the Loan Agreement are on file with the Authority and the Trustee.

The agreements of the Authority with Holders of the Series 2010 Bonds are fully set forth in the Resolutions. Neither any advertisement of the Series 2010 Bonds nor this Official Statement is to be construed as a contract with purchasers of the Series 2010 Bonds.

Any statements in this Official Statement involving matters of opinion, whether or not expressly stated, are intended merely as expressions of opinion and not as representations of fact.

The information regarding the College was supplied by the College. The Authority believes that this information is reliable, but the Authority makes no representations or warranties whatsoever as to the accuracy or completeness of this information.

The information regarding DTC and DTC's book-entry only system has been furnished by DTC. The Authority believes that this information is reliable, but makes no representations or warranties whatsoever as to the accuracy or completeness of this information.

"Appendix A - Certain Definitions," "Appendix C - Summary of Certain Provisions of the Loan Agreement," "Appendix D - Summary of Certain Provisions of the Resolution" and "Appendix E - Form of Approving Opinion of Bond Counsel" have been prepared by Squire, Sanders & Dempsey L.L.P., Bond Counsel.

"Appendix B - Financial Statements of St. Joseph's College and Independent Auditors' Report" contains the financial statements of the College as of and for the years ended June 30, 2009 and 2008 which have been audited by Grant Thornton, independent accountants as stated in their report appearing therein.

The College has reviewed the parts of this Official Statement describing the College, the Mortgage, the Estimated Sources and Uses of Funds, the Project and Appendix B. The College, as a condition to issuance of the Series 2010 Bonds, is required to certify that as of the date of this Official Statement, such parts do not contain any untrue statement of a material fact and do not omit to state a material fact necessary to make the statements made therein, in the light of the circumstances under which the statements are made, not misleading.

The College has agreed to indemnify the Authority, the Underwriter and certain others against losses, claims, damages and liabilities arising out of any untrue statements or omissions of statements of any material fact as described in the preceding paragraph.

The execution and delivery of this Official Statement by an Authorized Officer have been duly authorized by the Authority.

**DORMITORY AUTHORITY OF
THE STATE OF NEW YORK**

By: /s/ Paul T. Williams, Jr.
Authorized Officer

[THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK]

CERTAIN DEFINITIONS

[THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK]

CERTAIN DEFINITIONS

The following are definitions of certain of the terms defined in the Resolution, the Series 2010 Resolution, or the Loan Agreement and used in this Official Statement.

Accreted Value means with respect to any Capital Appreciation Bond (i) as of any Valuation Date, the amount set forth for such date in the Series Resolution authorizing such Capital Appreciation Bond or the Bond Series Certificate relating thereto and (ii) as of any date other than a Valuation Date, the sum of (a) the Accreted Value on the preceding Valuation Date and (b) the product of (1) a fraction, the numerator of which is the number of days having elapsed from the preceding Valuation Date and the denominator of which is the number of days from such preceding Valuation Date to the next succeeding Valuation Date, calculated based on the assumption that Accreted Value accrues during any semiannual period in equal daily amounts on the basis of a year of twelve (12) thirty-day months, and (2) the difference between the Accreted Values for such Valuation Dates.

Act means the Dormitory Authority Act being Title 4 of Article 8 of the Public Authorities Law of the State, as amended, including, without limitation, by the Health Care Financing Construction Act, being Title 4-B of Article 8 of the Public Authorities Law of the State of New York, as amended.

Appreciated Value means with respect to any Deferred Income Bond (i) as of any Valuation Date, the amount set forth for such date in the Series Resolution authorizing such Deferred Income Bond or the Bond Series Certificate relating thereto and (ii) as of any date other than a Valuation Date, the sum of (a) the Appreciated Value on the preceding Valuation Date and (b) the product of (1) a fraction, the numerator of which is the number of days having elapsed from the preceding Valuation Date and the denominator of which is the number of days from such preceding Valuation Date to the next succeeding Valuation Date, calculated based on the assumption that Appreciated Value accrues during any semiannual period in equal daily amounts on the basis of a year of twelve (12) thirty-day months, and (2) the difference between the Appreciated Values for such Valuation Dates, and (iii) as of any date of computation on and after the Interest Commencement Date, the Appreciated Value on the Interest Commencement Date.

Arbitrage Rebate Fund means the fund so designated and established by a Series Resolution pursuant to the Resolution.

Authority means the Dormitory Authority of the State of New York, a body corporate and politic constituting a public benefit corporation of the State created by the Act, or any body, agency or instrumentality of the State which shall hereafter succeed to the rights, powers, duties and functions of the Authority.

Authority Fee means the fee payable to the Authority consisting of all of the Authority's internal costs and overhead expenses attributable to the issuance of the Bonds and the construction of the Project, as more particularly described in Schedule B to the Loan Agreement and made a part of the Loan Agreement.

Authorized Newspaper means **The Bond Buyer** or any other newspaper of general circulation printed in the English language and customarily published at least once a day for at least five (5) days (other than legal holidays) in each calendar week in the Borough of Manhattan, City and State of New York, designated by the Authority.

Authorized Officer means (i) in the case of the Authority, the Chair, the Vice-Chair, the Treasurer, an Assistant Treasurer, the Secretary, an Assistant Secretary, the Executive Director, the Deputy Executive Director, the Chief Financial Officer, the Managing Director of Public Finance and Portfolio Monitoring, the Managing Director of Construction and the General Counsel, and when used with reference to any act or document also means any other person authorized by a resolution or the by-laws of the Authority to perform such act or execute such document; (ii) in the case of the Institution, when used with reference to any act or document, means the person or persons authorized by a resolution or the by-laws of the Institution to perform such act or execute such document; and (iii) in the case of the Trustee, the President, a Vice President, an Assistant Vice President, a Corporate Trust Officer, an Authorized Signatory, an Assistant Corporate Trust Officer, a Trust Officer or an Assistant Trust Officer

Appendix A

of the Trustee, and when used with reference to any act or document also means any other person authorized to perform any act or sign any document by or pursuant to a resolution of the Board of Directors of the Trustee or the by-laws of the Trustee.

Bond or **Bonds** means any of the bonds of the Authority authorized and issued pursuant to the Resolution and to a Series Resolution.

Bond Counsel means a law firm appointed by the Authority with respect to a Series of Bonds, having a national reputation in the field of municipal law whose opinions are generally accepted by purchasers of municipal bonds.

Bond Series Certificate means a certificate of an Authorized Officer of the Authority fixing terms, conditions and other details of Bonds of a Series in accordance with the delegation of power to do so under the Resolution or under a Series Resolution as it may be amended from time to time.

Bond Year means, unless otherwise stated in a Series Resolution or a Bond Series Certificate, a period of twelve (12) consecutive months beginning July 1 in any calendar year and ending on June 30 of the succeeding calendar year.

Bondholder, Holder of Bonds or **Holder** or any similar term, when used with reference to a Bond or Bonds of a Series, means the registered owner of any Bonds of such Series.

Book Entry Bond means a Bond of a Series authorized to be issued, and issued to and registered in the name of, a Depository for the participants in such Depository or the beneficial owner of such Bond.

Business Day means, unless otherwise defined in connection with Bonds of a particular Series, any day which is not a Saturday, Sunday or a day on which the Trustee or banking institutions chartered by the State or the United States of America are legally authorized to close in The City of New York.

Capital Appreciation Bond means any Bond as to which interest is compounded on each Valuation Date for such Bond and is payable only at the maturity or prior redemption thereof.

Code means the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended, and the applicable regulations thereunder.

Construction Fund means the fund so designated and established by a Series Resolution pursuant to the Resolution.

Continuing Disclosure Agreement means the agreement, if any, entered into in connection with the issuance of Bonds of a Series, by and among the Institution, the Authority and the Trustee, or such other parties designated at such times, providing for continuing disclosure.

Contract Documents means any general contract or agreement for the construction of the Project, notice to bidders, information for bidders, form of bid, general conditions, supplemental general conditions, general requirements, supplemental general requirements, bonds, plans and specifications, addenda, change orders, and any other documents entered into or prepared by or on behalf of the Institution relating to the construction of the Project, and any amendments to the foregoing.

Cost or **Costs of Issuance** means the items of expense incurred in connection with the authorization, sale and issuance of Bonds of a Series, which items of expenses shall include, but not be limited to, document printing and reproduction costs, filing and recording fees, costs of credit ratings, initial fees and charges of the Trustee, a Provider or a Depository, legal fees and charges, professional consultants' fees, fees and charges for execution, transportation and safekeeping of such Bonds, premiums, fees and charges for insurance on such Bonds, commitment fees or similar charges relating to a Credit Facility, a Liquidity Facility, an Interest Rate Exchange Agreement or a Remarketing Agreement, costs and expenses in connection with the refunding of Bonds or other

bonds or notes of the Authority, costs and expenses incurred pursuant to a remarketing agreement and other costs, charges and fees, including those of the Authority, in connection with the foregoing.

Cost or Costs of the Project means when used in relation to a Project the costs and expenses or the refinancing of costs and expenses determined by the Authority to be necessarily or appropriately incurred in connection with the Project, including, but not limited to, (i) costs and expenses of the acquisition of the title to or other interest in real property, including easements, rights-of-way and licenses, (ii) costs and expenses incurred for labor and materials and payments to contractors, builders and materialmen, for the acquisition, construction, reconstruction, rehabilitation, repair and improvement of the Project, (iii) the cost of surety bonds and insurance of all kinds, including premiums and other charges in connection with obtaining title insurance, that may be required or necessary prior to completion of the Project, which is not paid by a contractor or otherwise provided for, (iv) the costs and expenses for design, environmental inspections and assessments, test borings, surveys, estimates, plans and specifications and preliminary investigations therefor, and for supervising construction of the Project, (v) costs and expenses required for the acquisition and installation of equipment or machinery, (vi) all other costs which the Institution shall be required to pay or cause to be paid for the acquisition, construction, reconstruction, rehabilitation, repair, improvement and equipping of the Project, (vii) any sums required to reimburse the Institution or the Authority for advances made by them for any of the above items or for other costs incurred and for work done by them in connection with the Project (including interest on money borrowed from parties other than the Institution), (viii) interest on the Bonds of a Series, bonds, notes or other obligations of the Authority issued to finance Costs of the Project that accrued prior to, during and for a reasonable period after completion of the acquisition, construction, reconstruction, rehabilitation, repair, improvement or equipping of the Project, and (ix) fees, expenses and liabilities of the Authority incurred in connection with the Project or pursuant to the Resolution or to the Loan Agreement, a Mortgage, a Credit Facility, a Liquidity Facility or a Remarketing Agreement in connection with Option Bonds or Variable Interest Rate Bonds.

Credit Facility means, with respect to a Series of Bonds, an irrevocable letter of credit, surety bond, loan agreement, or other agreement, facility or insurance or guaranty arrangement pursuant to which the Authority is entitled to obtain money to pay the principal and Sinking Fund Installments of and interest on particular Bonds whether or not the Authority is in default under the Resolution, which is issued or provided by:

- (i) a bank, a trust company, a national banking association, an organization subject to registration with the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System under the Bank Holding Company Act of 1956 or any successor provisions of law, a federal branch pursuant to the International Banking Act of 1978 or any successor provisions of law, a domestic branch or agency of a foreign bank which branch or agency is duly licensed or authorized to do business under the laws of any state or territory of the United States of America, a savings bank or a saving and loan association;
- (ii) an insurance company or association chartered or organized under the laws of any state of the United States of America;
- (iii) the Government National Mortgage Association or any successor thereto;
- (iv) the Federal National Mortgage Association or any successor thereto; or
- (v) any other federal agency or instrumentality approved by the Authority.

Any such Credit Facility may also constitute a Liquidity Facility if it also meets the requirements of the definition of a Liquidity Facility contained in the Resolution.

Debt Service Fund means the fund so designated and established by a Series Resolution pursuant to the Resolution.

Debt Service Reserve Fund means the fund, if any, so designated, created and established pursuant to the Resolution

Appendix A

Debt Service Reserve Fund Requirement means the amount of money required to be deposited in a Debt Service Reserve Fund as determined in accordance with the Series Resolution pursuant to which such Debt Service Reserve Fund has been established and means, with respect to the Series 2010 Bonds, as of any particular date of computation, an amount equal to the greatest amount required in the then current or any future calendar year to pay the sum of the principal and Sinking Fund Installments of and interest on Outstanding Series 2010 Bonds payable during such year, excluding interest accrued thereon prior to July 1 of the next preceding year, except that if, upon the issuance, such amount would require moneys, in an amount in excess of the maximum amount permitted under the Code to be deposited therein from the proceeds of such Series 2010 Bonds, to be deposited therein, the Debt Service Reserve Fund Requirement shall mean an amount equal to the maximum amount permitted under the Code to be deposited therein from the proceeds of such Series 2010 Bonds, as certified by an Authorized Officer of the Authority.

Defeasance Security means:

(i) a Government Obligation of the type described in clauses (i), (ii), (iii) or (iv) of the definition of Government Obligation;

(ii) Federal Agency Obligation described in clauses (i) or (ii) of the definition of Federal Agency Obligation; and

(iii) an Exempt Obligation, provided such Exempt Obligation (i) is not subject to redemption prior to maturity other than at the option of the holder thereof or as to which irrevocable instructions have been given to the trustee of such Exempt Obligation by the obligor thereof to give due notice of redemption and to call such Exempt Obligation for redemption on the date or dates specified in such instructions and such Exempt Obligation is not otherwise subject to redemption prior to such specified date other than at the option of the holder thereof, (ii) is secured as to principal and interest and redemption premium, if any, by a fund consisting only of cash or Government Obligations, which fund may be applied only to the payment of such principal of and interest and redemption premium, if any, on such Exempt Obligation on the maturity date thereof or the redemption date specified in the irrevocable instructions referred to in clause (i) above, (iii) as to which the principal of and interest on the direct obligations of the United States of America which have been deposited in such fund, along with any cash on deposit in such fund, are sufficient to pay the principal of and interest and redemption premium, if any, on such Exempt Obligation on the maturity date or dates thereof or on the redemption date or dates specified in the irrevocable instructions referred to in clause (i) above, and (iv) is rated by at least two Rating Services in the highest rating category for such Exempt Obligation;

provided, however, that for purposes of (i), (ii) and (iii) above, such term shall not include (1) any interest in a unit investment trust or mutual fund or (2) any obligation that is subject to redemption prior to maturity other than at the option of the holder thereof; and

(iv) any other investments acceptable to the Rating Service(s) for defeasance.

Deferred Income Bond means any Bond as to which interest accruing thereon prior to the Interest Commencement Date of such Bond is compounded on each Valuation Date for such Deferred Income Bond, and as to which interest accruing after the Interest Commencement Date is payable semiannually on July 1 and January 1 of each Bond Year.

Depository means The Depository Trust Company, New York, New York, a limited purpose trust company organized under the laws of the State, or its nominee, or any other person, firm, association or corporation designated in the Series Resolution authorizing a Series of Bonds or a Bond Series Certificate relating to a Series of Bonds to serve as securities depository for the Bonds of such Series.

Event of Default, has the meaning given to such term in the Loan Agreement.

Exempt Obligation means:

(i) an obligation of any state or territory of the United States of America, any political subdivision of any state or territory of the United States of America, or any agency, authority, public benefit corporation or instrumentality of such state, territory or political subdivision, the interest on which is excludable from gross income under Section 103 of the Code, which is not a “specified private activity bond” within the meaning of Section 57(a)(5) of the Code and which, at the time an investment therein is made or such obligation is deposited in any fund or account under the Resolution, is rated, without regard to qualification of such rating by symbols such as “+” or “-” and numerical notation, no lower than the second highest rating category for such obligation by at least two Rating Services;

(ii) a certificate or other instrument which evidences the beneficial ownership of, or the right to receive all or a portion of the payment of the principal of or interest on any of the foregoing; and

(iii) a share or interest in a mutual fund, partnership or other fund registered under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, and operated in accordance with Rule 2a-7 of the Investment Company Act of 1940, as amended, wholly comprised of any of the foregoing obligations.

Facility Provider means the issuer of any Reserve Fund Facility.

Federal Agency Obligation means:

(i) an obligation issued by any federal agency or instrumentality approved by the Authority;

(ii) an obligation the principal of and interest on which are fully insured or guaranteed as to payment by a federal agency approved by the Authority;

(iii) a certificate or other instrument which evidences the beneficial ownership of, or the right to receive all or a portion of the payment of the principal of or interest on, any of the foregoing; and

(iv) a share or interest in a mutual fund, partnership or other fund registered under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, and operated in accordance with Rule 2a-7 of the Investment Company Act of 1940, as amended, wholly comprised of any of the foregoing obligations.

Government Obligation means:

(i) a direct obligation of the United States of America;

(ii) an obligation the principal of and interest on which are fully insured or guaranteed as to payment by the United States of America;

(iii) an obligation to which the full faith and credit of the United States of America are pledged;

(iv) a certificate or other instrument which evidences the beneficial ownership of, or the right to receive all or a portion of the payment of the principal of or interest on, any of the foregoing; and

Appendix A

(v) a share or interest in a mutual fund, partnership or other fund registered under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, and operated in accordance with Rule 2a-7 of the Investment Company Act of 1940, as amended, wholly comprised of any of the foregoing obligations.

Institution means St. Joseph's College, New York, a corporation duly organized and existing under the laws of the State, which is an institution for higher education, located in the State and authorized to confer degrees by law or by the Board of Regents of the State, or any successor thereto.

Intercreditor Agreement means an agreement by and among, *inter alia*, the Authority, the Trustee, and creditors of the Institution, with respect to (i) the relative priorities of the liens upon any Mortgage or Pledged Revenues or other shared collateral, (ii) limitations or conditions upon their respective rights to enforce, foreclose or realize upon such liens, and (iii) the application of any money realized from the enforcement, foreclosure or other realization upon such liens.

Interest Commencement Date means, with respect to any particular Deferred Income Bond, the date prior to the maturity date thereof specified in the Series Resolution authorizing such Bond or the Bond Series Certificate relating to such Bond, after which interest accruing on such Bond shall be payable on the interest payment date immediately succeeding such Interest Commencement Date and semiannually thereafter on July 1 and January 1 of each Bond Year.

Interest Rate Exchange Agreement means (i) an agreement entered into by the Authority or the Institution in connection with the issuance of or which relates to Bonds of a Series which provides that during the term of such agreement the Authority or the Institution is to pay to the counterparty thereto interest accruing at a fixed or variable rate per annum on an amount equal to a principal amount of such Bonds and that such counterparty is to pay to the Authority or the Institution an amount based on the interest accruing on a principal amount equal to the same principal amount of such Bonds at a fixed or variable rate per annum, in each case computed according to a formula set forth in such agreement, or that one shall pay to the other any net amount due under such agreement or (ii) interest rate cap agreements, interest rate floor agreements, interest rate collar agreements and any other interest rate related hedge agreements or arrangements.

Investment Agreement means a repurchase agreement or other agreement for the investment of money with a Qualified Financial Institution.

Liquidity Facility means, with respect to a Series of Bonds, an irrevocable letter of credit, a surety bond, a loan agreement, a Standby Purchase Agreement, a line of credit or other agreement or arrangement pursuant to which money may be obtained upon the terms and conditions contained therein for the purchase of such Bonds tendered for purchase in accordance with the terms of a Series Resolution authorizing such Bonds or a Bond Series Certificate relating to such Bonds, which is issued or provided by:

- (i) a bank, a trust company, a national banking association, an organization subject to registration with the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System under the Bank Holding Company Act of 1956 or any successor provisions of law, a federal branch pursuant to the International Banking Act of 1978 or any successor provisions of law, a savings bank, a domestic branch or agency of a foreign bank which branch or agency is duly licensed or authorized to do business under the laws of any state or territory of the United States of America, a savings bank or a savings and loan association;
- (ii) an insurance company or association chartered or organized under the laws of any state of the United States of America;
- (iii) the Government National Mortgage Association or any successor thereto;
- (iv) the Federal National Mortgage Association or any successor thereto; or
- (v) any other federal agency or instrumentality approved by the Authority.

Loan Agreement means the Loan Agreement, as the same may be amended, supplemented or otherwise modified as permitted by the Loan Agreement and by the Resolution.

Maximum Annual Debt Service means on any date, when used with respect to the Bonds, the greatest amount required in the then current or any future calendar year to pay the sum of the principal and Sinking Fund Installments of and interest on Outstanding Bonds payable during such year assuming that a Variable Interest Rate Bond bears interest at a fixed rate of interest equal to that rate which, in the reasonable determination of an Authorized Officer of the Authority, such Variable Interest Rate Bond would have had to bear as a fixed rate bond to be marketed at par on the date of its initial issuance.

Maximum Interest Rate means, with respect to any particular Variable Interest Rate Bond, the numerical rate of interest, if any, set forth in the Series Resolution authorizing such Bond or in the Bond Series Certificate relating to such Bond, as the maximum rate at which such Bond may bear interest at any time.

Minimum Interest Rate means, with respect to any particular Variable Interest Rate Bond, the numerical rate of interest, if any, set forth in the Series Resolution authorizing such Bond or in the Bond Series Certificate relating to such Bonds as the minimum rate at which such Bond may bear interest at any time.

Mortgage means a mortgage, if any, granted by the Institution to the Authority, in form and substance satisfactory to an Authorized Officer of the Authority, on the Mortgaged Property mortgaged in connection therewith as security for the performance of the Institution's obligations under the Loan Agreement, as such Mortgage may be amended or modified from time to time.

Mortgaged Property means the land or interest therein described in each Mortgage, together with the buildings and improvements thereon or hereafter erected thereon and the furnishings and equipment owned by the Institution located thereon or therein as may be specifically identified in a Mortgage.

Option Bond means any Bond of a Series which by its terms may be or is required to be tendered by and at the option of the Holder thereof for redemption by the Authority prior to the stated maturity thereof or for purchase by the Authority prior to the stated maturity thereof or the maturity of which may be extended by and at the option of the Holder thereof in accordance with the Series Resolution authorizing such Bonds or the Bond Series Certificate related to such Bonds.

Outstanding, when used in reference to Bonds of a Series, means, as of a particular date, all Bonds of such Series authenticated and delivered under the Resolution and under a Series Resolution except:

- (i) any Bond canceled by the Trustee at or before such date;
- (ii) any Bond deemed to have been paid in accordance with Section 12.01 of the Resolution;
- (iii) any Bond in lieu of or in substitution for which another Bond shall have been authenticated and delivered pursuant to Article III, Section 4.06 or Section 10.07 of the Resolution; and
- (iv) any Option Bond tendered or deemed tendered in accordance with the provisions of the Series Resolution authorizing such Bond or the Bond Series Certificate relating to such Bond on the applicable adjustment or conversion date, if interest thereon shall have been paid through such applicable date and the purchase price thereof shall have been paid or amounts are available for such payment as provided in the Resolution and in the Series Resolution authorizing such Bond or the Bond Series Certificate relating to such Bond.

Parity Indebtedness means, if applicable with respect to a Series of Bonds, have the meaning given such term in the applicable Loan Agreement.

Appendix A

Paying Agent means, with respect to a Series of Bonds, the Trustee and any other bank or trust company and its successor or successors, appointed pursuant to the provisions of the Resolution or of a Series Resolution, a Bond Series Certificate or any other resolution of the Authority adopted prior to authentication and delivery of such Series of Bonds for which such Paying Agent or Paying Agents shall be so appointed.

Permitted Collateral means:

(i) Government Obligations described in clauses (i), (ii) or (iii) of the definition of Government Obligation:

(ii) Federal Agency Obligations described in clauses (i) or (ii) of the definition of Federal Agency Obligation;

(iii) commercial paper that (a) matures within two hundred seventy (270) days after its date of issuance, (b) is rated in the highest short term rating category by at least one Rating Service and (c) is issued by a domestic corporation whose unsecured senior debt is rated by at least one Rating Service no lower than in the second highest rating category;

(iv) bankers' acceptances issued by a bank rated, at the time an investment therein is made or the same is deposited in any fund or account under the Resolution, in the highest short term rating category by at least one Rating Service and having maturities of not longer than three hundred sixty five (365) days from the date they are pledged; or

(v) financial guaranty agreements, surety or other similar bonds or other instruments of an insurance company that has an equity capital of at least \$125,000,000 and is rated by Bests Insurance Guide or a Rating Service in the highest rating category.

Permitted Encumbrances means when used in connection with a Project or the Mortgaged Property any of the following:

(i) The lien of taxes and assessments which are not delinquent;

(ii) The lien of taxes and assessments which are delinquent but the validity of which is being contested in good faith unless thereby the property or the interest of the Authority therein may be in danger of being lost or forfeited;

(iii) Minor defects and irregularities in the title to such property which do not in the aggregate materially impair the use of such property for the purposes for which it is or may be reasonably be expected to be held;

(iv) Easements, exceptions or reservations for the purpose of pipelines, telephone lines, telegraph lines, power lines and substations, roads, streets, alleys, highways, railroad purposes, drainage and sewerage purposes, dikes, canals, laterals, ditches, the removal of oil, gas, coal or other minerals, and other like purposes, or for the joint or common use of real property, facilities and equipment, which do not materially impair the use of such property for the purposes for which it is or may be reasonably be expected to be held;

(v) Any instrument recorded pursuant to the applicable Section of the Loan Agreement;

(vi) The Mortgage; and

(vii) Such other encumbrances, defects, and irregularities to which the prior written consent of the Authority or the Trustee, as applicable, has been obtained.

Permitted Investments means:

- (i) Government Obligations;
- (ii) Federal Agency Obligations;
- (iii) Exempt Obligations;
- (iv) uncollateralized certificates of deposit that are fully insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation and issued by a banking organization authorized to do business in the State;
- (v) collateralized certificates of deposit that are (a) issued by a banking organization authorized to do business in the State that has an equity capital of not less than \$125,000,000, whose unsecured senior debt, or debt obligations fully secured by a letter or credit, contract, agreement or surety bond issued by it, are, at the time an investment therein is made or the same is deposited in any fund or account under the Resolution, rated by at least one Rating Service in at least the second highest rating category, and (b) fully collateralized by Permitted Collateral;
- (vi) commercial paper issued by a domestic corporation rated, at the time an investment therein is made or the same is deposited in any fund or account under the Resolution, in the highest short term rating category by at least one Rating Service and having maturities of not longer than two hundred seventy (270) days from the date of purchase;
- (vii) bankers' acceptances issued by a bank rated, at the time an investment therein is made or the same is deposited in any fund or account under the Resolution, in the highest short term rating category by at least one Rating Service and having maturities of not longer than three hundred sixty five (365) days from the date they are purchased;
- (viii) Investment Agreements that are fully collateralized by Permitted Collateral; and
- (ix) a share or interest in a mutual fund, partnership or other fund registered under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, and operated in accordance with Rule 2a-7 of the Investment Company Act of 1940, as amended, whose objective is to maintain a constant share value of \$1.00 per share and that is rated, at the time an investment therein is made or the same is deposited in any fund or account under the Resolution, in the highest short term rating category by at least one Rating Service.

Pledged Revenues means an amount equal to the Maximum Annual Debt Service from tuition and fees charged to students for academic instruction, the right to receive the same and the proceeds thereof.

Project means a "dormitory" as defined in the Act, which may include more than one part, financed in whole or in part from the proceeds of the sale of a Series of Bonds, as more particularly described in the Resolution, in or pursuant to a Series Resolution or in or pursuant to a Bond Series Certificate or, with respect to the Series 2010 Bonds, the Project described in Schedule C to the Loan Agreement.

Provider Payments means the amount, certified by a Provider to the Trustee, payable to such Provider by the Institution on account of amounts advanced by it under a Credit Facility or a Liquidity Facility, including interest on amounts advanced and fees and charges with respect thereto.

Qualified Financial Institution means any of the following entities that has an equity capital of at least \$125,000,000 or whose obligations are unconditionally guaranteed by an affiliate or parent having an equity capital of at least \$125,000,000:

- (i) a securities dealer, the liquidation of which is subject to the Securities Investors Protection Corporation or other similar corporation, and (a) that is on the Federal Reserve Bank of New York list of primary government securities dealers and (b) whose senior unsecured long term

Appendix A

debt is at the time an investment with it is made is rated by at least one Rating Service no lower than in the second highest rating category, or, in the absence of a rating on long term debt, whose short term debt is rated by at least one Rating Service no lower than in the highest rating category for such short term debt; **provided, however**, that no short term rating may be utilized to determine whether an entity qualifies under this paragraph as a Qualified Financial Institution if the same would be inconsistent with the rating criteria of any Rating Service or credit criteria of an entity that provides a Credit Facility or financial guaranty agreement in connection with Outstanding Bonds of a Series;

(ii) a bank, a trust company, a national banking association, a corporation subject to registration with the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System under the Bank Holding Company Act of 1956 or any successor provisions of law, a federal branch pursuant to the International Banking Act of 1978 or any successor provisions of law, a domestic branch or agency of a foreign bank which branch or agency is duly licensed or authorized to do business under the laws of any state or territory of the United States of America, a savings bank, a savings and loan association, an insurance company or association chartered or organized under the laws of the United States of America, any state of the United States of America or any foreign nation, whose senior unsecured long term debt is at the time an investment with it is made is rated by at least one Rating Service no lower than in the second highest rating category, or, in the absence of a rating on long term debt, whose short term debt is rated by at least one Rating Service no lower than in the highest rating category for such short term debt; **provided, however**, that no short term rating may be utilized to determine whether an entity qualifies under this paragraph as a Qualified Financial Institution if the same would be inconsistent with the rating criteria of any Rating Service or credit criteria of an entity that provides a Credit Facility or financial guaranty agreement in connection with Outstanding Bonds of a Series;

(iii) a corporation affiliated with or which is a subsidiary of any entity described in (i) or (ii) above or which is affiliated with or a subsidiary of a corporation which controls or wholly owns any such entity, whose senior unsecured long term debt is at the time an investment with it is made is rated by at least one Rating Service no lower than in the second highest rating category, or, in the absence of a rating on long term debt, whose short term debt is rated by at least one Rating Service no lower than in the highest rating category for such short term debt; **provided, however**, that no short term rating may be utilized to determine whether an entity qualifies under this paragraph as a Qualified Financial Institution if the same would be inconsistent with the rating criteria of any Rating Service or credit criteria of an entity that provides a Credit Facility or financial guaranty agreement in connection with Outstanding Bonds of a Series;

(iv) the Government National Mortgage Association or any successor thereto, the Federal National Mortgage Association or any successor thereto, or any other federal agency or instrumentality approved by the Authority; or

(v) a corporation whose obligations, including any investments of any money held under the Resolution purchased from such corporation, are insured by an insurer that meets the applicable rating requirements set forth above.

Rating Service means each of Moody's Investors Service, Inc., Standard & Poor's Rating Services, and Fitch, Inc., in each case, which has assigned a rating to Outstanding Bonds at the request of the Authority, or their respective successors and assigns.

Record Date means, unless a Series Resolution authorizing Variable Interest Rate Bonds or Option Bonds or a Bond Series Certificate relating thereto provides otherwise with respect to such Variable Rate Bonds or Option Bonds, the fifteenth (15th) day (whether or not a Business Day) of the calendar month next preceding an interest payment date.

Redemption Price, when used with respect to a Bond of a Series, means the principal amount of such Bond plus the applicable premium, if any, payable upon redemption prior to maturity thereof pursuant to the Resolution or to the applicable Series Resolution or Bond Series Certificate.

Refunding Bonds means all Bonds, whether issued in one or more Series of Bonds, authenticated and delivered on original issuance pursuant to the Resolution, and any Bonds thereafter authenticated and delivered in lieu of or in substitution for such Bonds pursuant to the Resolution.

Related Agreements means each Remarketing Agreement, Interest Rate Exchange Agreement, Intercreditor Agreement or agreement entered into in connection with a Reserve Fund Facility, Liquidity Facility or Credit Facility, to which the Institution is a party.

Remarketing Agent means the person appointed by or pursuant to a Series Resolution authorizing the issuance of Option Bonds to remarket such Option Bonds tendered or deemed to have been tendered for purchase in accordance with such Series Resolution or the Bond Series Certificate relating to such Option Bonds.

Remarketing Agreement means, with respect to Option Bonds of a Series, an agreement either between the Authority and the Remarketing Agent, or among the Authority, the Institution and the Remarketing Agent, relating to the remarketing of such Bonds.

Reserve Fund Facility means a surety bond, insurance policy or letter of credit which constitutes any part of a Debt Service Reserve Fund Requirement authorized to be delivered to the Trustee pursuant to the Resolution.

Resolution means the St. Joseph's College Revenue Bond Resolution, adopted by the Authority June 23, 2010, as from time to time amended or supplemented by Supplemental Resolutions or Series Resolutions in accordance with the terms and provisions of the Resolution.

Restricted Gift means, when used in connection with the Project, any gift, grant or bequest of money or other property made or given by any person the use of which has been restricted by such person to paying any cost or expense that constitutes a Cost of the Project.

Revenues means, (i) all payments received or receivable by the Authority that pursuant to the Loan Agreement entered into in connection with such Series of Bonds are required to be paid to the Trustee, other than payments to the Trustee for (A) the administrative costs and expenses or fees of the Trustee, (B) deposit to the Arbitrage Rebate Fund, or (C) deposit to any fund or account established by or pursuant to such Series Resolution for the payment of the purchase price of Option Bonds tendered or deemed to have been tendered for purchase, and (D) deposit to any fund or account established by or pursuant to such Series Resolution for repayment of advances made by a Liquidity Facility Provider for payment of the purchase price of Option Bonds; and (ii) all amounts received as a consequence of the enforcement of a Loan Agreement, including but not limited to amounts derived from the foreclosure or sale of or other realization upon any Pledged Revenues or Mortgage.

Serial Bonds means the Bonds so designated in a Series Resolution or a Bond Series Certificate.

Series means all of the Bonds authenticated and delivered on original issuance and pursuant to the Resolution and to the Series Resolution authorizing such Bonds as a separate Series of Bonds or a Bond Series Certificate, and any Bonds of such Series thereafter authenticated and delivered in lieu of or in substitution for such Bonds pursuant to the Resolution, regardless of variations in maturity, interest rate, Sinking Fund Installments, if any, or other provisions.

Series Resolution means a resolution of the Authority authorizing the issuance of a Series of Bonds adopted by the Authority pursuant to the Resolution.

Series 2010 Bonds means the Bonds authorized by Article II of the Series 2010 Resolution.

Appendix A

Series 2010 Resolution means the Series 2010 Resolution Authorizing Up To \$35,000,000 St. Joseph's College School Revenue Bonds, Series 2010, adopted by the Authority on June 23, 2010.

Sinking Fund Installment means, with respect to a Series of Bonds, as of any date of calculation:

(i) when used with respect to any Bonds of such Series, other than Option Bonds or Variable Interest Rate Bonds, so long as any such Bonds are Outstanding, the amount of money required by the Series Resolution pursuant to which such Bonds were issued or by the Bond Series Certificate relating thereto to be paid on a single future July 1 for the retirement of any Outstanding Bonds of said Series which mature after said future July 1, but does not include any amount payable by the Authority by reason only of the maturity of a Bond, and said future July 1 is deemed to be the date when a Sinking Fund Installment is payable and the date of such Sinking Fund Installment and said Outstanding Bonds are deemed to be Bonds entitled to such Sinking Fund Installment; and

(ii) when used with respect to Option Bonds or Variable Interest Rate Bonds of a Series, so long as such Bonds are Outstanding, the amount of money required by the Series Resolution pursuant to which such Bonds were issued or by the Bond Series Certificate relating thereto to be paid on a single future date for the retirement of any Outstanding Bonds of said Series which mature after said future date, but does not include any amount payable by the Authority by reason only of the maturity of a Bond, and said future date is deemed to be the date when a Sinking Fund Installment is payable and the date of such Sinking Fund Installment and said Outstanding Option Bonds or Variable Interest Rate Bonds of such Series are deemed to be Bonds entitled to such Sinking Fund Installment.

Standby Purchase Agreement means, with respect to a Series of Bonds, an agreement pursuant to which a person is obligated to purchase an Option Bond or a Variable Interest Rate Bond tendered for purchase.

State means the State of New York.

Sub-Series means the grouping of the Bonds of a Series established by the Authority pursuant to the Series Resolution authorizing the issuance of the Bonds of such Series or the Bond Series Certificate related to such Series of Bonds.

Supplemental Resolution means any resolution of the Authority amending or supplementing the Resolution, any Series Resolution or any Supplemental Resolution adopted and becoming effective in accordance with the terms and provisions of the Resolution.

Tax Certificate means the certificate of the Authority, including the appendices, schedules and exhibits thereto, executed in connection with the issuance of the Bonds in which the Authority makes representations and agreements as to arbitrage and compliance with the provisions of Section 141 through 150, inclusive, of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, or any similar certificate, agreement or other instrument made, executed and delivered in lieu of said certificate, in each case as the same may be amended or supplemented.

Term Bonds means, with respect to a Series of Bonds, the Bonds so designated in a Series Resolution or a Bond Series Certificate and payable from Sinking Fund Installments.

Trustee means the bank or trust company appointed as Trustee for a Series of Bonds pursuant to a Series Resolution or Bond Series Certificate delivered under the Resolution and having the duties, responsibilities and rights provided for in the Resolution with respect to such Series, and its successor or successors and any other bank or trust company which may at any time be substituted in its place pursuant to the Resolution.

Valuation Date means (i) with respect to any Capital Appreciation Bond, each date set forth in the Series Resolution authorizing such Capital Appreciation Bond or in the Bond Series Certificate relating to such Bond on which a specific Accreted Value is assigned to such Capital Appreciation Bond, and (ii) with respect to any Deferred

Income Bond, the date or dates prior to the Interest Commencement Date and the Interest Commencement Date set forth in the Series Resolution authorizing such Bond or in the Bond Series Certificate relating to such Bond on which specific Appreciated Values are assigned to such Deferred Income Bond.

Variable Interest Rate means the rate or rates of interest to be borne by a Series of Bonds or any one or more maturities within a Series of Bonds which is or may be varied from time to time in accordance with the method of computing such interest rate or rates specified in the Series Resolution authorizing such Bonds or the Bond Series Certificate relating to such Bonds and which shall be based on (i) a percentage or percentages or other function of an objectively determinable interest rate or rates (e.g., a prime lending rate) which may be in effect from time to time or at a particular time or times or (ii) a stated interest rate that may be changed from time to time as provided in such Series Resolution or Bond Series Certificate, **provided, however**, that in each case such variable interest rate may be subject to a Maximum Interest Rate and a Minimum Interest Rate as provided in the Series Resolution authorizing such Bonds or the Bond Series Certificate relating thereto, and that Series Resolution or Bond Series Certificate shall also specify either (x) the particular period or periods of time or manner of determining such period or periods of time for which each variable interest rate shall remain in effect or (y) the time or times at which any change in such variable interest rate shall become effective or the manner of determining such time or times.

Variable Interest Rate Bond means any Bond of a Series which bears a Variable Interest Rate; **provided, however**, that a Bond the interest rate on which shall have been fixed for the remainder of the term thereof shall no longer be a Variable Interest Rate Bond.

Schedule D to the Loan Agreement Definitions

“Annual Debt Service” when used in connection with any Indebtedness, means as of any particular date of calculation the amount required to be paid by the Institution during the then current Fiscal Year to pay the principal, whether at maturity or upon mandatory redemptions and prepayments of, and interest on such Indebtedness; **provided, however**, that such amounts required to be paid on Short-Term Indebtedness shall include interest only.

“Balloon Indebtedness” is Long-Term Indebtedness of which 25% or more in principal amount matures or is mandatorily required to be redeemed or prepaid in any one year.

“Debt Service Coverage Ratio” means the ratio of Operating Income Available for Debt Service to Annual Debt Service.

“Fiscal Year” means a twelve month period beginning on July 1st of a calendar year and ending on June 30th of the next succeeding calendar year, or such other twelve month period as the Institution may elect as its fiscal year.

“Indebtedness” means, without duplication, indebtedness for borrowed money incurred or guaranteed by the Institution, whether or not evidenced by notes, bonds, debentures or other similar evidences of indebtedness, including indebtedness under purchase money mortgages, capital leases, installment sales agreements and similar security arrangements which appear as debt on the audited balance sheet of the Institution in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles then applicable to the Institution; **provided, however**, that Non-Recourse Indebtedness shall not constitute “Indebtedness” for purposes of the “debt service coverage” section of Schedule D to the Loan Agreement.

“Long-Term Indebtedness” means Indebtedness having an original maturity of greater than one (1) year or Indebtedness on which the Institution has an option to extend the maturity thereof for a period of greater than one (1) year beyond the date of the original incurrence thereof; **provided, however**, that Non-Recourse Indebtedness shall not constitute “Indebtedness” for purposes of the “available assets to debt” section of Schedule D to the Loan Agreement.

“Maximum Annual Debt Service” when used in connection with any Indebtedness for purposes of Schedule D to the Loan Agreement, means as of any particular date of calculation the greatest amount required to be paid by the Institution during the then current or any future Fiscal Year to pay the principal, whether at maturity or

Appendix A

upon mandatory redemptions and prepayments, of and interest on such Indebtedness; **provided, however**, that such amounts required to be paid on Short-Term Indebtedness shall include interest only.

“Management Consultant” means a nationally recognized accounting or management consulting firm or other similar firm, experienced in reviewing and assessing the Institution’s operations, acceptable to the Authority and pursuant to an engagement agreement acceptable to the Authority.

“Non-Recourse Indebtedness” means indebtedness secured by a mortgage or other lien on property on which the creditor has agreed that it will not seek to enforce or collect such indebtedness out of any property or assets of the Institution other than the property securing the same or to collect any deficiency upon a foreclosure, forced sale or other realization upon such property out of any other property or assets of the Institution

“Operating Income Available for Debt Service” means total unrestricted operating revenues *minus* total unrestricted operating expenses, exclusive of depreciation and amortization and interest paid, all as shown on the audited financial statements of the Institution stated in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles then applicable to the Institution.

“Refunding Debt” means Long-Term Indebtedness issued or incurred to pay or to provide for the payment of other Long-Term Indebtedness.

“Reporting Date” means the first business day that is 120 days after each Testing Date.

“Short-Term Indebtedness” means any Indebtedness that is not Long-Term Indebtedness.

“Testing Date” means the last day of the Institution’s Fiscal Year.

“Unrestricted Resources” means as of any particular date of calculation the sum of all unrestricted net assets, exclusive of Plant Equity, in each case determined in accordance with generally accepted accounting principals then applicable to the Institution.

“Unrestricted Resources to Debt Ratio” means the ratio of Unrestricted Resources to Long-Term Indebtedness.

**FINANCIAL STATEMENTS OF ST. JOSEPH'S COLLEGE
AND INDEPENDENT AUDITORS' REPORT**

[THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK]

FINANCIAL STATEMENTS TOGETHER WITH
REPORT OF INDEPENDENT CERTIFIED PUBLIC ACCOUNTANTS

ST. JOSEPH'S COLLEGE

For the year ended June 30, 2009

CONTENTS

	<u>Page(s)</u>
Report of Independent Certified Public Accountants	1
Financial Statements:	
Statement of Financial Position as of June 30, 2009, with comparative information for 2008	2
Statement of Changes in Unrestricted Net Assets for the year ended June 30, 2009, with comparative information for 2008	3
Statement of Changes in Net Assets for the year ended June 30, 2009, with summarized comparative totals for 2008	4
Statement of Cash Flows for the year ended June 30, 2009, with comparative information for 2008	5
Notes to Financial Statements	6-18



Audit • Tax • Advisory

Grant Thornton LLP
666 Third Avenue, 13th Floor
New York, NY 10017-4011

T 212.599.0100
F 212.370.4520
www.GrantThornton.com

REPORT OF INDEPENDENT CERTIFIED PUBLIC ACCOUNTANTS

To the Board of Trustees of
St. Joseph's College:

We have audited the accompanying statement of financial position of St. Joseph's College (the "College") as of June 30, 2009, and the related statements of changes in unrestricted net assets, changes in net assets and cash flows for the year then ended. These financial statements are the responsibility of the College's management. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these financial statements based on our audit. The prior year comparative information has been derived from the College's fiscal 2008 financial statements and, in our report dated October 9, 2008, we expressed an unqualified opinion on those financial statements.

We conducted our audit in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America as established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free of material misstatement. An audit includes consideration of internal control over financial reporting as a basis for designing audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the College's internal controls over financial reporting. Accordingly, we express no such opinion. An audit also includes examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements, assessing the accounting principles used and the significant estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall financial statement presentation. We believe that our audit provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

In our opinion, the financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of St. Joseph's College as of June 30, 2009, and the changes in its net assets and its cash flows for the year then ended in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

GRANT THORNTON LLP

New York, New York
October 15, 2009

St. Joseph's College

STATEMENT OF FINANCIAL POSITION

As of June 30, 2009, with comparative information for 2008

	Total	
	2009	2008
<u>ASSETS</u>		
Cash and cash equivalents	\$ 631,549	\$ 610,706
Student accounts receivable, net of allowance of \$650,000 and 575,000 in 2009 and 2008, respectively	3,022,532	1,862,900
Contributions receivable, net (Note C)	1,519,314	967,070
Student loans receivable, net of allowance of \$82,000 in 2009 and 2008	935,436	867,298
Other receivables, including government grants	735,471	287,691
Deferred charges and other assets	951,523	1,139,502
Beneficial interest in trusts (Note C)	894,111	659,224
Investments, at fair value (Note D)	34,406,108	47,861,654
Property, plant and equipment, net (Notes E and F)	41,993,456	40,377,351
Total assets	<u>\$ 85,089,500</u>	<u>\$ 94,633,396</u>
<u>LIABILITIES AND NET ASSETS</u>		
Liabilities:		
Accounts payable and accrued expenses	\$ 4,307,924	\$ 4,112,223
Beneficial interest in trusts (Note C)	284,476	312,729
Deferred revenue	4,460,176	3,205,059
Long-term debt (Note F)	360,838	423,715
U.S. Government grants refundable	706,349	688,058
Total liabilities	<u>10,119,763</u>	<u>8,741,784</u>
Commitments (Note I)		
Net assets:		
Unrestricted:		
Available for operations	391,655	931,820
Designated for long-term investment and capital (Note L)	28,252,808	41,816,274
Plant funds	36,375,056	34,469,772
Total unrestricted net assets	<u>65,019,519</u>	<u>77,217,866</u>
Temporarily restricted (Notes B and L)	1,478,170	1,352,224
Permanently restricted (Notes B and L)	8,472,048	7,321,522
Total net assets	<u>74,969,737</u>	<u>85,891,612</u>
Total liabilities and net assets	<u>\$ 85,089,500</u>	<u>\$ 94,633,396</u>

The accompanying notes are an integral part of this statement.

St. Joseph's College

STATEMENT OF CHANGES IN UNRESTRICTED NET ASSETS

For the year ended June 30, 2009, with comparative information for 2008

	Operations	Long-Term Investment	Plant Funds	Total	
				2009	2008
Unrestricted revenues, gains, and other support:					
Tuition and fees, net of scholarships and fellowships of \$12,689,245 and \$10,950,783 in 2009 and 2008, respectively	\$ 59,353,278	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 59,353,278	\$ 54,707,499
State appropriations	586,564	-	-	586,564	521,562
Contributions	643,287	1,003	-	644,290	665,189
Dillon Child Study Center fees	1,173,731	-	-	1,173,731	1,015,839
Investment income	56,176	332,516	238,519	627,211	1,533,489
Realized gains from sale of investments	-	789,609	47,019	836,628	3,909,563
Net (depreciation) appreciation in fair value of investments (Note D)	(1,398,917)	(11,973,486)	47,739	(13,324,664)	(1,874,286)
Contributed services (Note C)	1,061,157	-	-	1,061,157	1,092,907
Government grants	653,466	-	-	653,466	582,479
Special events, net (Note H)	49,898	-	-	49,898	79,276
Other	439,071	-	-	439,071	531,321
Net assets released from restrictions	1,575,658	-	-	1,575,658	918,587
Total unrestricted revenues, gains and other support	64,193,369	(10,850,358)	333,277	53,676,288	63,683,425
Expenses:					
Instruction	27,421,441	-	1,108,449	28,529,890	26,812,081
Academic support	7,082,227	-	672,988	7,755,215	7,278,766
Student services	15,226,595	-	831,337	16,057,932	14,508,365
Institutional support (Note J)	12,185,620	-	1,345,978	13,531,598	14,066,966
Total expenses	61,915,883	-	3,958,752	65,874,635	62,666,178
Excess (deficiency) of unrestricted revenues, gains and other support over expenses	2,277,486	(10,850,358)	(3,625,475)	(12,198,347)	1,017,247
Transfers:					
Plant asset acquisitions financed by operations and long-term investments	(2,817,651)	(2,713,108)	5,530,759	-	-
(Decrease) increase in unrestricted net assets	\$ (540,165)	\$ (13,563,466)	\$ 1,905,284	\$ (12,198,347)	\$ 1,017,247

The accompanying notes are an integral part of this statement.

St. Joseph's College

STATEMENT OF CHANGES IN NET ASSETS

For the year ended June 30, 2009, with summarized comparative totals for 2008

	Unrestricted	Temporarily Restricted	Permanently Restricted	Total	
				2009	2008
Additions:					
Total unrestricted revenues, gains, and other support	\$ 53,676,288	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 53,676,288	\$ 63,683,425
Gifts and bequests	-	1,673,924	1,006,151	2,680,075	2,979,202
Investment income	-	133,224	-	133,224	156,179
Beneficial interest in trusts	-	185,503	-	185,503	3,474
Realized (losses) gains from sale of investments	-	(254,836)	-	(254,836)	362,751
Net depreciation in fair value of investments (Note D)	-	(17,752)	-	(17,752)	(25,039)
Special events, net (Note H)	-	125,916	-	125,916	151,058
Reclassification of assets	-	-	144,375	144,375	10,000
Total additions	53,676,288	1,845,979	1,150,526	56,672,793	67,321,050
Deductions:					
Expenses	65,874,635	-	-	65,874,635	62,666,178
Net assets released from restrictions	-	1,575,658	-	1,575,658	918,587
Reclassification of assets	-	144,375	-	144,375	10,000
Total deductions	65,874,635	1,720,033	-	67,594,668	63,594,765
(Decrease) increase in net assets	(12,198,347)	125,946	1,150,526	(10,921,875)	3,726,285
Net assets, beginning of year	77,217,866	1,352,224	7,321,522	85,891,612	82,165,327
Net assets, end of year	\$ 65,019,519	\$ 1,478,170	\$ 8,472,048	\$ 74,969,737	\$ 85,891,612

The accompanying notes are an integral part of this statement.

St. Joseph's College

STATEMENT OF CASH FLOWS

For the year ended June 30, 2009, with comparative information for 2008

	<u>2009</u>	<u>2008</u>
Cash flows from operating activities:		
(Decrease) increase in net assets	\$ (10,921,875)	\$ 3,726,285
Adjustments to reconcile (decrease) increase in net assets to net cash provided by operating activities:		
Depreciation and amortization	3,914,654	3,604,547
Net depreciation in fair value of investments	13,342,416	1,899,325
Contributions restricted for endowment	(846,654)	(2,155,759)
Realized gains on sale of investments	(581,792)	(4,272,314)
Change in allowance for student accounts receivable	75,000	-
Discount on contributions receivable	159,497	14,922
Changes in assets and liabilities:		
Increase in student accounts receivable	(1,234,632)	(6,056)
Increase in contributions receivable	(711,741)	(671,277)
(Increase) decrease in other receivables, including government grants	(447,780)	560,816
Decrease (increase) in deferred charges and other assets	187,979	(353,530)
Increase in accounts payable and accrued expenses	195,701	122,625
Increase (decrease) in deferred revenue	1,255,117	(423,951)
Net cash provided by operating activities	<u>4,385,890</u>	<u>2,045,633</u>
Cash flows from investing activities:		
Acquisition of property, plant and equipment	(5,530,759)	(6,390,725)
Student loans granted	(141,502)	(158,010)
Student loan collections	73,364	102,073
Proceeds from sales of investments	53,530,613	21,993,126
Purchases of investments	(52,835,691)	(13,140,471)
Net cash (used in) provided by investing activities	<u>(4,903,975)</u>	<u>2,405,993</u>
Cash flows from financing activities:		
Contributions restricted for endowment	846,654	2,155,759
Beneficial interest in trust	(263,140)	(346,495)
Principal payments on long-term debt	(62,877)	(6,194,531)
U.S. Government grants refundable	18,291	(7,926)
Net cash provided by (used in) financing activities	<u>538,928</u>	<u>(4,393,193)</u>
Net increase in cash and cash equivalents	20,843	58,433
Cash and cash equivalents, beginning of year	<u>610,706</u>	<u>552,273</u>
Cash and cash equivalents, end of year	<u>\$ 631,549</u>	<u>\$ 610,706</u>
Supplemental cash flow information:		
Cash paid for interest	<u>\$ 26,029</u>	<u>\$ 428,323</u>

The accompanying notes are an integral part of this statement.

St. Joseph's College

NOTES TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

June 30, 2009

NOTE A - DESCRIPTION OF COLLEGE AND MISSION STATEMENT

St. Joseph's College (the "College") was founded in 1916 in Brooklyn, New York and exists today on its original campus in Brooklyn and a campus in Patchogue, New York. The College serves a diverse community of academically eligible students who live within commuting distance of either the Brooklyn or Patchogue campus.

The College is an independent not-for-profit institution providing academic undergraduate and graduate level programs. The mission of St. Joseph's College is to provide strong academic and value-oriented programs, rooted in a liberal arts tradition that supports provision for career preparation and enhancement. The College aims in this way to prepare each student for a life characterized by integrity, intellectual and spiritual values, social responsibility, and service - a life that is worthy of the College's motto, *Esse non videri*: "To be and not to seem."

The College is classified as a 501(c)(3) organization and is exempt from federal income taxes under Section 501(a) of the Internal Revenue Code and a similar provision of the New York State tax laws. Accordingly, no provision for income taxes has been reflected in the accompanying financial statements. Donors may generally deduct contributions for income tax purposes to the extent allowable by law.

NOTE B - BASIS OF PRESENTATION

The College prepares its financial statements in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America, using the accrual basis of accounting. Accordingly, the College's resources are classified and reported based upon the existence or absence of donor-imposed restrictions, as follows:

Unrestricted - net asset that are not subject to donor imposed restrictions and, therefore, are available to meet the College's objectives. Unrestricted net assets have been categorized as follows:

Available for Operations - include all resources of the College, which are expendable for carrying on the College's mission.

Designated for Long-Term Investment and Capital - include resources designated by the College's Board of Trustees for long-term investment and capital purposes.

Plant Funds - include the property, plant and equipment owned by the College, net of accumulated depreciation and amortization, unexpended plant fund investments and related debt incurred to acquire or construct such assets.

St. Joseph's College

NOTES TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (continued)

June 30, 2009

NOTE B (continued)

Temporarily Restricted - consist of net assets that have been limited by donor-imposed restrictions that either expire with the passage of time or can be fulfilled and removed by the actions of the College pursuant to those restrictions.

At June 30, 2009 and 2008, temporarily restricted net assets consisted of the following:

	<u>2009</u>	<u>2008</u>
Beneficial interest in trusts	963,570	659,224
Grants - purpose restricted	107,648	250,704
Capital projects and scholarships	<u>406,952</u>	<u>442,296</u>
	<u>\$ 1,478,170</u>	<u>\$ 1,352,224</u>

Permanently Restricted - include funds wherein donors have stipulated that the principal contributed be invested and maintained in perpetuity. Income earned from those investments is available for expenditures according to those restrictions, if any, imposed by the donors. At June 30, 2009 and 2008, permanently restricted net assets consisted of donor-restricted scholarship funds aggregating \$8,472,048 and \$7,321,522, respectively.

NOTE C - SUMMARY OF SIGNIFICANT ACCOUNTING POLICIES

1. *Cash and Cash Equivalents*

Cash and cash equivalents include cash held in banks and money market funds. The College considers all highly liquid financial instruments with original maturities of three months or less to be cash equivalents. Cash equivalents are carried at fair value, which approximates cost. At June 30, 2009, the College's cash and cash equivalents were considered Level 1 under Statement of Financial Accounting Standards ("SFAS") No. 157.

2. *Investments*

Investments consist primarily of equities, corporate bonds and government securities and are recorded at fair value in the accompanying financial statements.

St. Joseph's College

NOTES TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (continued)

June 30, 2009

NOTE C (continued)

In September 2006, the FASB issued SFAS No. 157, *Fair Value Measurements*, which was effective for the College's fiscal year beginning July 1, 2008. SFAS No. 157 defines fair value, establishes a framework for measuring fair value, and expands disclosures about fair value measurements. The new standard provides a consistent definition of fair value, which focuses on an exit price between market participants in an orderly transaction as prescribed by SFAS No. 157. The standard also prioritizes, within the measurement of fair value, the use of market-based information over entity-specific information and establishes a three-level hierarchy for fair value measurements based on the transparency of information used in the valuation of an asset or liability as of the measurement date. Assets and liabilities measured and reported at fair value are classified and disclosed in one of the following categories:

Level 1 - Quoted prices are available in active markets for identical assets or liabilities as of the reporting date. The type of investments in Level 1 include listed equities held in the name of the College, and exclude listed equities and other securities held indirectly through commingled funds.

Level 2 - Pricing inputs, including broker quotes, are generally those other than exchange quoted prices in active markets, which are either directly or indirectly observable as of the reporting date, and fair value is determined through the use of models or other valuation methodologies.

Level 3 - Pricing inputs are unobservable for the assets or liability and includes situations where there is little, if any, market activity for the assets or liability. The inputs into the determination of fair value require significant management judgment or estimation. Investments that are included in this category generally include privately held investments and partnership interests.

3. *Property, Plant and Equipment, Net*

Property, plant and equipment are recorded at cost, net of accumulated depreciation and amortization. Depreciation and amortization is computed using the straight-line method over the following useful lives:

Buildings	60 years
Building improvements	10 years
Furniture and equipment	10 years
Computers	3 years

Costs for repairs and maintenance are charged to expense as incurred.

St. Joseph's College

NOTES TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (continued)

June 30, 2009

NOTE C (continued)

Construction in progress, if any, is carried at cost incurred to date and, when completed, is transferred to the appropriate property, plant or equipment category and depreciated in accordance with the College's policies, as stated above.

During fiscal 2006, the College adopted Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 143, "Accounting for Asset Retirement Obligations," and its related Financial Interpretation ("FIN") No. 47, "Accounting for Conditional Asset Retirement Obligations," which required the College to recognize the cost associated with the eventual remediation and abatement of asbestos and other environmental hazards contained within its physical plant. The cost of the abatement was estimated using historical construction and renovation documents. For the year ended June 30, 2006, the adoption of FIN No. 47 resulted in an increase in property, plant and equipment of \$12,346, the recognition of an asset retirement obligation liability of \$327,746, the recognition of an expense for accretion and depreciation of \$17,370 and a cumulative noncash adjustment to net assets of \$298,030, representing the cumulative accretion of interest related to this obligation from the date of construction through June 30, 2006.

For the years ended June 30, 2009 and 2008, FIN No. 47 resulted in a decrease in property, plant and equipment, net, of \$1,763 and \$1,764, respectively, and an increase in the asset retirement obligation liability, which is included within accounts payable and accrued expenses, of \$18,067 and \$17,987, respectively.

4. *Revenue Recognition*

Revenue is recognized in the period earned. The College derives its revenue principally from student tuition and fees, government grants and aid, contributions and investment returns. The carrying value of student receivables has been reduced by an appropriate allowance for uncollectible accounts, based on historical collection experience, and therefore, approximates net realizable value. Receivables are written off in the period in which they are deemed to be uncollectible. Amounts received in advance are reported as deferred revenues.

5. *Contributed Services*

Contributed services provided by religious personnel have been recognized in the accompanying financial statements. The amount recognized for such services represents the difference between the compensation paid to religious personnel and the comparable compensation that would have been paid to lay persons, if lay persons were to occupy such positions. The College's Board of Trustees and Administration believe that the value of contributed services helps to support the College's scholarship program. In addition, the College receives certain other contributed services, which are primarily related to legal and investment advisory services.

St. Joseph's College

NOTES TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (continued)

June 30, 2009

NOTE C (continued)

6. Contributions and Beneficial Interests

The College records contributions of cash and other assets when an unconditional promise to give is received from a donor. Contributions are recorded at the fair value of the assets received and are classified as either permanently restricted, temporarily restricted or unrestricted, based upon donor-imposed restrictions, if any.

The College reports gifts of cash or other assets as restricted support if they are received with donor restrictions that limit the use of the donated assets. When a donor restriction expires, that is, when a stipulated time restriction ends or purpose restriction is accomplished, temporarily restricted net assets are reclassified to unrestricted net assets and reported in the accompanying financial statements as net assets released from restrictions.

The College reports pledges expected to be collected within one year at net realizable value. Pledges to be paid to the College over a period of years are recorded at their estimated present value using a risk-free rate of return (ranging from 3% - 5% at June 30, 2009 and 2008). Contributions receivable were due as follows:

	<u>2009</u>	<u>2008</u>
Less than one year	\$ 659,859	\$ 886,118
One to five years	523,000	85,000
Five and thereafter	<u>500,000</u>	<u>-</u>
	1,682,859	971,118
Less: discount to present value	<u>(163,545)</u>	<u>(4,048)</u>
Total contributions receivable, net	<u>\$ 1,519,314</u>	<u>\$ 967,070</u>

The College has legally enforceable rights and claims to assets held under split-interest agreements created by donors. Split-interest agreements, which also create certain obligations for the College, are valued using a discount rate of 3% - 5% and applicable mortality tables. At June 30, 2009 and 2008, the values of these investments were as follows:

	<u>2009</u>	<u>2008</u>
Annuity trusts	\$ 89,854	\$ 188,400
Life insurance	<u>804,257</u>	<u>470,824</u>
Total beneficial interest in trusts	<u>\$ 894,111</u>	<u>\$ 659,224</u>

St. Joseph's College

NOTES TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (continued)

June 30, 2009

NOTE C (continued)

7. *Use of Estimates*

The preparation of financial statements in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America requires management to make estimates and assumptions that affect the reported amounts of assets and liabilities and disclosure of contingent assets and liabilities at the date of the financial statements and the reported amounts of revenues and expenses during the reporting period. Actual results could differ from those estimates.

8. *Presentation of Certain Prior Year Information*

The accompanying statement of changes in net assets includes prior year summarized information in total but not by net asset classification. Such information does not include sufficient detail to constitute a presentation in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America. Accordingly, such information should be read in conjunction with the College's financial statements as of and for the year ended June 30, 2008, from which the summarized information was derived.

NOTE D - INVESTMENTS

The College records investments in equity securities with readily determinable market values and all investments in debt securities at fair value, with gains and losses included in the accompanying statement of changes in net assets.

At June 30, 2009 and 2008, the College's investments were comprised of the following:

2009	Fair Value	Cost	Unrealized Appreciation (Depreciation)
Common stocks	\$ 20,272,280	\$ 21,988,940	\$ (1,716,660)
U.S. Treasury obligations	2,444,429	2,381,689	62,740
Corporate bonds	6,339,069	6,245,475	93,594
Mutual funds	384,593	387,471	(2,878)
	29,440,371	31,003,575	(1,563,204)
Temporary cash investments	4,965,737	4,965,737	-
Total investments	<u>\$ 34,406,108</u>	<u>\$ 35,969,312</u>	<u>\$ (1,563,204)</u>

St. Joseph's College

NOTES TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (continued)

June 30, 2009

NOTE D (continued)

2008	Fair Value	Cost	Unrealized Appreciation (Depreciation)
Common stocks	\$ 33,378,781	\$ 21,808,619	\$ 11,570,150
U.S. Treasury obligations	2,503,268	2,388,690	114,578
Corporate bonds	6,383,473	6,305,673	77,800
Mutual funds	<u>480,224</u>	<u>463,545</u>	<u>16,679</u>
	42,745,746	30,966,527	11,779,212
Temporary cash investments	<u>5,115,908</u>	<u>5,115,908</u>	<u>-</u>
Total investments	<u>\$ 47,861,654</u>	<u>\$ 36,082,435</u>	<u>\$ 11,779,212</u>

For the years ended June 30, 2009 and 2008, the College incurred investment expenses of approximately \$115,000 and \$139,000, respectively, which are presented net of investment income in the accompanying financial statements.

For the years ended June 30, 2009 and 2008, net appreciation (depreciation) in the fair value of investments was computed as follows:

	<u>2009</u>	<u>2008</u>
Unrealized appreciation in fair value of investments at beginning of year	\$ 11,779,212	\$ 13,678,543
Unrealized (depreciation) appreciation in fair value of investments at end of year	<u>(1,563,204)</u>	<u>11,779,212</u>
Net depreciation during fiscal year	<u>\$ (13,342,416)</u>	<u>\$ (1,899,319)</u>

For the years ended June 30, 2009 and 2008, net depreciation in fair value of investments was reflected in the accompanying statement of changes in net assets as follows:

	<u>2009</u>	<u>2008</u>
Unrestricted net assets	\$ (13,324,664)	\$ (1,874,286)
Temporarily restricted net assets	<u>(17,752)</u>	<u>(25,039)</u>
Total	<u>\$ (13,342,416)</u>	<u>\$ (1,899,325)</u>

St. Joseph's College

NOTES TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (continued)

June 30, 2009

NOTE D (continued)

The following table presents the College's fair value hierarchy for its investments, measured at fair value, as of June 30, 2009.

	<u>Fair Value</u>	<u>Level 1</u>	<u>Level 2</u>	<u>Level 3</u>
Financial assets investments:				
Cash and cash equivalents	\$ 4,965,737	\$ 4,965,737	\$ -	\$ -
Equities	20,272,280	20,272,280	-	-
Fixed income	8,783,498	8,783,498	-	-
Mutual funds	<u>384,593</u>	<u>384,593</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>-</u>
Total	<u>\$ 34,406,108</u>	<u>\$ 34,406,108</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ -</u>

NOTE E - PROPERTY, PLANT AND EQUIPMENT, NET

At June 30, 2009 and 2008, property, plant and equipment, net, consisted of the following:

	<u>2009</u>	<u>2008</u>
<u>Brooklyn Campus</u>		
Land	\$ 524,599	\$ 524,599
Buildings and improvements	20,871,007	19,990,443
Furniture and equipment	<u>8,903,662</u>	<u>7,358,228</u>
	30,299,268	27,873,270
Accumulated depreciation and amortization	<u>(17,768,819)</u>	<u>(15,674,338)</u>
	<u>12,530,449</u>	<u>12,198,932</u>
<u>Patchogue Campus</u>		
Land	6,329,391	6,329,391
Buildings and improvements	35,330,347	33,451,767
Furniture and equipment	<u>10,979,922</u>	<u>9,753,741</u>
	52,639,660	49,534,899
Accumulated depreciation and amortization	<u>(23,176,653)</u>	<u>(21,356,480)</u>
	<u>29,463,007</u>	<u>28,178,419</u>
Total property, plant and equipment, net	<u>\$ 41,993,456</u>	<u>\$ 40,377,351</u>

St. Joseph's College

NOTES TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (continued)

June 30, 2009

NOTE F - LONG-TERM DEBT

In May 2000, the Town of Brookhaven Industrial Development Agency (the "Agency") issued \$8,000,000 in Civic Facility Revenue bonds to finance a portion of the costs of (1) the acquisition, construction and equipping of a new addition to an existing building (the "Technology Information Center") located at the College's Patchogue campus, (2) the renovation and equipping of an existing building located at the College's Patchogue campus to create additional offices and classroom space, (3) funding the Debt Service Reserve Fund Requirement, and (4) paying certain bond issuance costs. Under an agreement with the Agency, the College conveyed to the Agency, title to the Patchogue campus buildings and, in turn, leased these facilities from the Agency. The College was required to make semiannual rental payments equal to principal and interest on the related bond issue when due, as well as associated costs. In December 2007, the College satisfied all obligations under this debt agreement. In addition, the remaining unamortized bond issuance costs were fully amortized. The College paid a premium of \$58,400 in fiscal 2008 for the early retirement of these bonds.

In December 2003, the College entered into an agreement with Louis R. Minardi to purchase 2.5 acres of land adjacent to the Patchogue Campus that was known as the "Minardi Nursery," for \$1,000,000. The College paid \$100,000 upon executing the contract and an additional \$250,000 at closing. The remaining \$650,000 was satisfied by a purchase money note and mortgage from the purchaser to the seller.

The terms of the mortgage require that the remaining \$650,000 be paid with interest at the rate of 6.5% per annum, for ten (10) years, in forty (40) equal successive quarterly installments of principal and interest totaling \$22,227 each. Such installments commenced on June 15, 2004 and are due on the same day of each three-month period thereafter until paid in full. The terms of the mortgage also provide that at any time after five (5) years from the date of closing, with ten (10) days written notice, the mortgagor or any subsequent owner of the mortgaged premises shall have the right and privilege to prepay, without premium or penalty, the unpaid balance of principal and interest due to the date of payment.

Future debt service payments are comprised of the following:

Year Ending June 30,	Principal	Interest	Total Debt Service
2010	\$ 67,065	\$ 21,841	\$ 88,906
2011	71,531	17,375	88,906
2012	76,295	12,611	88,906
2013	81,376	7,530	88,906
2014	64,571	2,110	66,681
Thereafter	-	-	-
Total	<u>\$ 360,838</u>	<u>\$ 61,467</u>	<u>\$ 422,305</u>

St. Joseph's College

NOTES TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (continued)

June 30, 2009

NOTE G - PENSION PLAN

The College maintains a defined contribution retirement plan (the "Plan") covering substantially all full-time employees who meet certain age and service requirements. For the years ended June 30, 2009 and 2008, the College contributed \$1,760,374 and \$1,532,414, respectively, to the Plan, which represented 8% of annual compensation for all eligible employees.

NOTE H - SPECIAL EVENTS

For the years ended June 30, 2009 and 2008, the College recorded revenues from the following special events:

Special Event	Gross Revenues		Direct Expenses		Net Revenues	
	2009	2008	2009	2008	2009	2008
Unrestricted:						
Golf outing	\$ 90,705	\$ 125,486	\$ 40,807	\$ 46,210	\$ 49,898	\$ 79,276
Temporarily restricted:						
Dinner dance	<u>169,804</u>	<u>198,534</u>	<u>43,888</u>	<u>47,476</u>	<u>125,916</u>	<u>151,058</u>
Total	<u>\$ 260,509</u>	<u>\$ 324,020</u>	<u>\$ 84,695</u>	<u>\$ 93,686</u>	<u>\$ 175,814</u>	<u>\$ 230,334</u>

For the years ended June 30, 2009 and 2008, net revenues from the golf outing were unrestricted, but internally designated to be used for athletics. For the years ended June 30, 2009 and 2008, net revenues from the dinner dance were restricted by donors for use in support of current scholarships.

NOTE I - COMMITMENTS

The College has entered into various office equipment and automobile operating leases, which are subject to future minimum payments as follows:

<u>Year Ending June 30,</u>	
2010	\$ 365,412
2011	231,494
2012	<u>62,530</u>
Total	<u>\$ 659,436</u>

St. Joseph's College

NOTES TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (continued)

June 30, 2009

NOTE J - FUNDRAISING EXPENSES

Fundraising expenses are included in institutional support in the accompanying statement of changes in unrestricted net assets. For the years ended June 30, 2009 and 2008, fundraising costs totaled \$547,759 and \$576,831, respectively. For purposes of reporting fundraising expenses, the College includes only those fundraising costs incurred by its development office.

NOTE K - ALLOCATION OF CERTAIN EXPENSES

The College allocates operation and maintenance of plant, depreciation and amortization, and interest expense based on proportional expenditures using estimates of building square footage and the functional use of each facility financed by debt. For the years ended June 30, 2009 and 2008, the following allocation of expenses was included within the respective functional categories in the accompanying statement of changes in unrestricted net assets:

	Operation and Maintenance	Depreciation and Amortization	Interest	2009 Total
Instruction	\$ 1,788,769	\$ 1,096,104	\$ 7,288	\$ 2,892,161
Academic support	1,086,038	665,491	4,425	1,755,954
Student services	1,341,577	822,077	5,466	2,169,120
Institutional support	<u>2,172,076</u>	<u>1,330,982</u>	<u>8,850</u>	<u>3,511,908</u>
	<u>\$ 6,388,460</u>	<u>\$ 3,914,654</u>	<u>\$ 26,029</u>	<u>\$ 10,329,143</u>
	Operation and Maintenance	Depreciation and Amortization	Interest	2008 Total
Instruction	\$ 1,708,528	\$ 1,009,273	\$ 119,930	\$ 2,837,731
Academic support	1,037,321	612,773	72,815	1,722,909
Student services	1,281,396	756,955	89,948	2,128,299
Institutional support	<u>2,074,641</u>	<u>1,225,546</u>	<u>145,630</u>	<u>3,445,817</u>
	<u>\$ 6,101,886</u>	<u>\$ 3,604,547</u>	<u>\$ 428,323</u>	<u>\$ 10,134,756</u>

St. Joseph's College

NOTES TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (continued)

June 30, 2009

NOTE L – ENDOWMENT

The following table illustrates the College's changes in its endowment net assets as of June 30, 2009, which is presented in accordance with the FASB Staff Position ("FSP") 117-1, "Endowments of Not-for-Profit Colleges":

Fund Balance Description	Unrestricted	Temporarily Restricted Endowment	Permanently Restricted	Total
Donor restricted (endowment)	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 8,472,048	\$ 8,472,048
Board designated (quasi)	<u>28,252,808</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>28,252,808</u>
Total	<u>\$ 28,252,808</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ 8,472,048</u>	<u>\$ 36,724,856</u>

The following summarizes endowment related activities for the year ended June 30, 2009:

Fund Balance Description	Unrestricted	Temporarily Restricted Endowment	Permanently Restricted	Total
Endowment assets, beginning of year	\$ 41,816,274	\$ -	\$ 7,321,522	\$ 49,137,796
Investment return:				
Investment income	1,122,125	-	-	1,122,125
Net unrealized depreciation	<u>(11,973,486)</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>(11,973,486)</u>
Total investment return	<u>(10,851,361)</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>(10,851,361)</u>
Gifts received	1,003	-	1,006,151	1,007,154
Fund reclasses	-	-	144,375	144,375
Plant asset acquisitions financed by long-term investments	<u>(2,713,108)</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>(2,713,108)</u>
	<u>(2,712,105)</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>1,150,526</u>	<u>(1,561,579)</u>
Endowment assets, end of year	<u>\$ 28,252,808</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ 8,472,048</u>	<u>\$ 36,724,856</u>

St. Joseph's College

NOTES TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (continued)

June 30, 2009

NOTE M - SUBSEQUENT EVENTS

In May 2009, the FASB issued Statement 165, *Subsequent Events* ("SFAS No. 165"), to incorporate the accounting and disclosure requirements for subsequent events into U.S. generally accepted accounting principles. SFAS No. 165 introduces new terminology, defines a date through which management must evaluate subsequent events, and lists the circumstances under which an entity must recognize and disclose events or transactions occurring after the statement of financial position date. The College adopted SFAS No. 165 as of June 30, 2009, which was the required effective date.

The College evaluated its June 30, 2009 financial statements for subsequent events through October 15, 2009, the date the financial statements were available to be issued. The College is not aware of any subsequent events which would require recognition or disclosure in the financial statements.

**SUMMARY OF CERTAIN PROVISIONS
OF THE LOAN AGREEMENT**

[THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK]

SUMMARY OF CERTAIN PROVISIONS OF THE LOAN AGREEMENT

The following is a brief summary of certain provisions of the Loan Agreement. This summary does not purport to be complete and reference is made to the Loan Agreement for full and complete statements of such and all provisions. The headings below are not part of the Loan Agreement but have been added for ease of reference. Defined terms used herein shall have the meaning ascribed to them in Appendix A.

Construction of the Project

The Institution agrees that, whether or not there are sufficient moneys available to it under the provisions of the Resolution, the Series Resolution and the Loan Agreement, the Institution shall complete the acquisition, design, construction, reconstruction, rehabilitation and improving or otherwise providing and furnishing and equipping of the Project, substantially in accordance with the Contract Documents related to such Project. Subject to the conditions of the Loan Agreement, the Authority will, to the extent of moneys available in the Construction Fund, cause the Institution to be reimbursed for, or pay, any costs and expenses incurred by the Institution which constitute Costs of the Project, provided such costs and expenses are approved by the Authority, which approval shall not be unreasonably withheld.

(Section 5)

Amendment of the Project

The Institution, with the prior written consent of the Authority, which consent will not be unreasonably withheld, may amend the Project to decrease, increase or otherwise modify the scope thereof. Any such increase may provide for the addition of any further acquisition, design, construction, reconstruction, rehabilitation, renovation, improving, or otherwise providing, furnishing and equipping of the Project which the Authority is authorized to undertake. After the date of the Loan Agreement, the Institution shall not enter into, amend or modify, by change order or otherwise, any Contract Document that materially affects the scope or nature of the Project, without the prior written approval of the Authority, which approval shall not be unreasonably withheld. The Institution shall deliver to the Authority copies of such change orders as the Authority may from time to time request. The Institution shall provide such moneys as in the reasonable judgment of the Authority may be required for the cost of completing the Project in excess of the moneys in the Construction Fund established for such Project, whether such moneys are required as a result of an increase in the scope of the Project or otherwise. Such moneys shall be paid to the Trustee for deposit in the Construction Fund within fifteen (15) days after receipt by the Institution of written notice from the Authority that such moneys are required.

(Section 6)

Financial Obligations

(a) Except to the extent that moneys are available therefor under the Resolution or the Series Resolution or the Loan Agreement, including moneys in the Debt Service Fund, and interest accrued but unpaid on investments held in the Debt Service Fund, but excluding moneys in the Debt Service Reserve Fund, the Institution unconditionally agrees to pay or cause to be paid, so long as Bonds are Outstanding, to or upon the order of the Authority, from its general funds or any other moneys legally available to it:

(i) On or before the date of delivery of the Bonds the Authority Fee agreed to by the Authority and the Institution in connection with issuance of the Bonds;

(ii) On or before the date of delivery of Bonds, such amount, if any, as is required, in addition to the proceeds of such Bonds available therefor, to pay the Costs of Issuance of the Bonds, and other costs in connection with the issuance of the Bonds;

Appendix C

(iii) Five business Days prior to an interest payment date on Outstanding Variable Interest Rate Bonds, the interest coming due on such Variable Interest Rate Bonds on such interest payment date, assuming that such Bonds will, from and after the next succeeding date on which the rates at which such Bonds bear interest are to be determined, bear interest at a rate per annum equal to the rate per annum for such Bonds on the immediately preceding Business Day, plus one percent (1%) per annum;

(iv) On the tenth (10th) day of each month commencing on the tenth (10th) day of the sixth (6th) month immediately preceding the date on which interest on Outstanding Bonds that are not Variable Interest Rate Bonds becomes due, one-sixth (1/6) of the interest coming due on such Bonds on the immediately succeeding interest payment date on such Bonds; **provided, however**, that, if with respect to such Outstanding Bonds there are more or less than six (6) such payment dates prior to the first interest payment on such Bonds, on each payment date prior to such interest payment date the Institution shall pay with respect to such Bonds an amount equal to the interest coming due on such Bonds on such interest payment date multiplied by a fraction, the numerator of which is one (1) and the denominator of which is the number of payment dates prior to the first interest payment date on such Bonds;

(v) On the tenth (10th) day of each month commencing on the tenth (10th) day of the July immediately preceding the July 1 on which the principal or a Sinking Fund Installment of Outstanding Bonds becomes due, one-twelfth (1/12) of the principal and Sinking Fund Installment on such Bonds coming due on such July 1; **provided, however**, that, if with respect to the Outstanding Bonds there are less than twelve (12) such payment dates prior to the July 1 on which principal or Sinking Fund Installments come due on such Bonds, on each payment date prior to such July 1 the Institution shall pay with respect to such Bonds an amount equal to the principal and Sinking Fund Installments of such Bonds coming due on such July 1 multiplied by a fraction, the numerator of which is one (1) and the denominator of which is the number of payment dates prior to such July 1; **provided, however**, with respect to Sinking Fund Installments of Option Bonds or Variable Interest Rate Bonds that come due in months other than July, the terms of this subsection shall apply except that references to July shall be replaced with the applicable month(s) in which the related Sinking Fund Installment comes due;

(vi) Except as provided below, by 1:30 p.m., New York City time, on the day on which payment of the purchase price of an Option Bond tendered for purchase which has not been remarketed or remarketed at less than the principal amount thereof and for which there is no Liquidity Facility then in effect, is due, the purchase price of such Option Bond, which shall be paid in immediately available funds; **provided, however**, that (A) if the Institution has received notice that such payment is due after 10:00 a.m., New York City time, but prior to 3:00 p.m., New York City time, on such day, then payment by the Institution shall be made by 5:00 p.m., New York City time on such day, and (B) if such notice is given after 3:00 p.m., New York City time, on such day, then payment by the Institution shall be made by 10:00 a.m. on the next succeeding Business Day;

(vii) At least forty-five (45) days prior to any date on which the Redemption Price or purchase price of Bonds previously called for redemption or contracted to be purchased, other than an Option Bond to be purchased or redeemed pursuant to an optional or mandatory tender thereof, or Bonds being redeemed pursuant to Sinking Fund Installments in accordance with the Loan Agreement, is to be paid, the amount required to pay the Redemption Price or purchase price of such Bonds;

(viii) On December 10 of each Bond Year one-half (1/2) of the Annual Administrative Fee payable during such Bond Year in connection with the Bonds, and on June 10 of each Bond Year the balance of the Annual Administrative Fee payable during such Bond Year; **provided, however**, that the Annual Administrative Fee with respect to the Bonds payable during the Bond Year during which such Annual Administrative Fee became effective shall be equal to the Annual Administrative Fee with respect to such Bonds multiplied by a fraction the numerator of which is

the number of calendar months or parts thereof remaining in such Bond Year and the denominator of which is twelve (12);

(ix) Promptly after notice from the Authority, but in any event not later than fifteen (15) days after such notice is given, the amount set forth in such notice as payable to the Authority (A) for the Authority Fee then unpaid, (B) to reimburse the Authority for payments made by it pursuant to the provisions of the Loan Agreement summarized in paragraph (e) below and any expenses or liabilities incurred by the Authority pursuant to provisions of the Loan Agreement summarized under the headings “**Covenant as to Insurance**” and “**Taxes and Assessments**” below and other provisions of the Loan Agreement related to indemnity by the Institution, (C) to reimburse the Authority for any external costs or expenses incurred by it attributable to the issuance of the Bonds or the financing or construction of the Project, including but not limited to any fees or other amounts payable by the Authority under a Remarketing Agreement, a Liquidity Facility or a Credit Facility, (D) for the costs and expenses incurred by the Authority to compel full and punctual performance by the Institution of all the provisions of the Loan Agreement or of the Mortgage or of the Resolution in accordance with the terms thereof, (E) for the fees and expenses of the Trustee and any Paying Agent in connection with performance of their duties under the Resolution, (F) to restore the Debt Service Reserve Fund to the Debt Service Reserve Fund Requirement, and (G) to pay any Provider Payments then due and unpaid;

(x) Promptly upon demand by the Authority (a copy of which shall be furnished to the Trustee), all amounts required to be paid by the Institution as a result of an acceleration pursuant to the provisions of the Loan Agreement summarized under the heading “**Defaults and Remedies**” below;

(xi) Promptly upon demand by the Authority, the difference between the amount on deposit in the Arbitrage Rebate Fund available to be rebated in connection with the Bonds or otherwise available therefor under the Resolution and the amount required to be rebated to the Department of the Treasury of the United States of America in accordance with the Code in connection with the Bonds; and

(xii) Promptly upon demand by the Authority, all amounts required to be paid by the Authority to a Counterparty in accordance with an Interest Rate Exchange Agreement or to reimburse the Authority for any amounts paid to a Counterparty in accordance with an Interest Rate Exchange Agreement; and

(xiii) To the extent not otherwise set forth in the Loan Agreement, including without limitation, in the event of any insufficiency, any amounts necessary to pay the principal, Sinking Fund Installment, or Redemption Price, if any, of, and interest on, the Bonds, on the dates, in the amounts, at the times and in the manner provided in or pursuant to the Resolution and the Series Resolution, whether at maturity, upon acceleration, redemption or otherwise.

Subject to the provisions of the Loan Agreement and of the Resolution or the Series Resolution, the Institution shall receive a credit against the amount required to be paid by the Institution during a Bond Year pursuant to the provisions of the Loan Agreement summarized in paragraph (a)(v) above on account of any Sinking Fund Installments if, prior to the date notice of redemption is given pursuant to the Resolution with respect to Bonds to be redeemed through any Sinking Fund Installments during the next succeeding Bond Year, either (i) the Institution delivers to the Trustee for cancellation one or more Bonds of the maturity to be so redeemed or (ii) the Trustee, at the direction of the Authority, has purchased one or more Bonds maturity to be so redeemed from amounts on deposit in the Debt Service Fund in accordance with the Resolution during such Bond Year. The amount of the credit shall be equal to the principal amount of the Bonds so delivered.

(b) Notwithstanding any provisions in the Loan Agreement or in the Resolution to the contrary (except as otherwise specifically provided for in this paragraph), all moneys paid by the Institution to the Trustee pursuant to the Loan Agreement or otherwise held by the Trustee shall be applied in reduction of the Institution’s indebtedness to the Authority under the Loan Agreement, first, with respect to interest and,

Appendix C

then, with respect to the principal amount of such indebtedness, but only to the extent that, with respect to interest on such indebtedness, such moneys are applied by the Trustee for the payment of interest on Outstanding Bonds, and, with respect to the principal of such indebtedness, such moneys have been applied to, or are held for, payments in reduction of the principal amount of Outstanding Bonds and as a result thereof Bonds have been paid or deemed to have been paid in accordance with the provisions of the Resolution summarized in Appendix D under the heading "Defeasance." Except as otherwise provided in the Resolution, the Trustee shall hold such moneys in trust in accordance with the applicable provisions of the Resolution for the sole and exclusive benefit of the Holders of Bonds, regardless of the actual due date or applicable payment date of any payment to the Holders of Bonds.

(c) The obligations of the Institution to make payments or cause the same to be made under the Loan Agreement shall be absolute and unconditional and the amount, manner and time of making such payments shall not be decreased, abated, postponed or delayed for any cause or by reason of the happening or non-happening of any event, irrespective of any defense or any right of set-off, recoupment or counterclaim which the Institution may otherwise have against the Authority, the Trustee or any Holder of Bonds for any cause whatsoever including, without limiting the generality of the foregoing, failure of the Institution to complete the Project or the completion thereof with defects, failure of the Institution to occupy or use the Project, any declaration or finding that the Bonds are or the Resolution is invalid or unenforceable or any other failure or default by the Authority or the Trustee; **provided, however**, that nothing in the Loan Agreement shall be construed to release the Authority from the performance of any agreements on its part contained in the Loan Agreement or any of its other duties or obligations, and in the event the Authority shall fail to perform any such agreement, duty or obligation, the Institution may institute such action as it may deem necessary to compel performance or recover damages for non-performance. Notwithstanding the foregoing, the Authority shall have no obligation to perform its obligations under the Loan Agreement to cause advances to be made to reimburse the Institution for, or to pay, the Costs of the Project beyond the extent of moneys in the Construction Fund established for such Project available therefor.

The Loan Agreement and the obligations of the Institution to make payments under the Loan Agreement are general obligations of the Institution.

(d) The Authority, for the convenience of the Institution, shall furnish to the Institution statements of the due date, purpose and amount of payments to be made pursuant to the Loan Agreement. The failure to furnish such statements shall not excuse non-payment of the amounts payable under the Loan Agreement at the time and in the manner provided by the Loan Agreement. The Institution shall notify the Authority as to the amount and date of each payment made to the Trustee by the Institution.

(e) The Authority shall have the right in its sole discretion to make on behalf of the Institution any payment required pursuant to the provisions of the Loan Agreement which has not been made by the Institution when due. No such payment by the Authority shall limit, impair or otherwise affect the rights of the Authority under the provisions of the Loan Agreement summarized under the heading "**Defaults and Remedies**" below arising out of the Institution's failure to make such payment and no payment by the Authority shall be construed to be a waiver of any such right or of the obligation of the Institution to make such payment.

(f) The Institution, if it is not then in default under the Loan Agreement, shall have the right to make voluntary payments in any amount to the Trustee. In the event of a voluntary payment, the amount so paid shall be deposited in the Debt Service Fund and applied in accordance with the Resolution or held by the Trustee for the payment of Bonds in accordance with the Resolution. Upon any voluntary payment by the Institution or any payment made pursuant to the provisions of the Loan Agreement summarized under the heading "**Sale of the Project**" below, the Authority agrees to direct the Trustee to purchase or redeem Bonds in accordance with the Resolution or to give the Trustee irrevocable instructions in accordance with the Resolution with respect to such Bonds; **provided, however**, that in the event such voluntary payment is in the sole judgment of the Authority sufficient to pay all amounts then due under the Loan Agreement and under the Resolution, including the purchase or redemption of all Bonds Outstanding, or to pay or provide for the payment of all Bonds Outstanding in accordance the Resolution, the Authority agrees, in accordance with the instructions of the Institution, to direct the Trustee to purchase or redeem all Bonds Outstanding,

or to cause all Bonds Outstanding to be paid or to be deemed paid in accordance with Section 12.01(b) of the Resolution.

(g) If the Institution elects to purchase Bonds, with the written consent of the Authority, the Institution shall give written notice to the Authority and the Trustee whenever Bonds are to be purchased at the election of the Institution, which written notice shall include the maturity and principal amount of the Bonds to be so purchased. All such purchases shall be subject to the condition that money for the payment of the purchase price therefore is available on the date set for each such purchase.

(Section 9)

Reserve Funds

The Institution agrees that it will at all times maintain on deposit in the Debt Service Reserve Fund an amount at least equal to the Debt Service Reserve Fund Requirement, provided that the Institution shall be required to deliver moneys, Government Obligations or Exempt Obligations to the Trustee for deposit in the Debt Service Reserve Fund as a result of a deficiency in such fund only after the notice required by the Resolution is given.

In accordance with the Resolution, the Institution may deliver to the Trustee a Reserve Fund Facility for all or any part of a Debt Service Reserve Fund Requirement in accordance with and to the extent permitted by the Resolution.

The delivery to the Trustee of Government Obligations and Exempt Obligations and other moneys from time to time made by the Institution pursuant to the Loan Agreement shall constitute a pledge thereof, and shall create a security interest therein, for the benefit of the Authority to secure performance of the Institution's obligations under the Loan Agreement and for the benefit of the Trustee to secure the performance of the obligations of the Authority under the Resolution. The Institution authorizes the Authority pursuant to the Resolution to pledge such Government Obligations and Exempt Obligations and other moneys to secure payment of the principal, Sinking Fund Installments, if any, and Redemption Price of, and interest on the Bonds, whether at maturity, upon acceleration or otherwise, and the fees and expenses of the Trustee, and to make provision for and give directions with respect to the custody, reinvestment and disposition thereof in any manner not inconsistent with the terms of the Loan Agreement and of the Resolution.

(Section 10)

Security Interest in Pledged Revenues

As security for the payment of all liabilities and the performance of all obligations of the Institution pursuant to the Loan Agreement, the Institution does continuously pledge, grant a security interest in, and assign to the Authority the Pledged Revenues, together with the Institution's right to receive and collect the Pledged Revenues and the proceeds of the Pledged Revenues.

The Institution represents and warrants that no part of the Pledged Revenues or any right to receive or collect the same or the proceeds thereof is subject to any lien, pledge, security interest or assignment, other than the Prior Pledges, and that the Pledged Revenues assigned pursuant to the Loan Agreement are legally available to provide security for the Institution's performance under the Loan Agreement. The Institution agrees that after the date of the Loan Agreement it shall not create or permit the creation of any pledge, assignment, encumbrance, restriction, security interest in or other commitment of or with respect to the Pledged Revenues which is prior or equal to the pledge made by the Loan Agreement.

(Section 11)

Appendix C

Collection of Pledged Revenues

Subject to the provisions summarized in the following paragraph, commencing on the date on which the Bonds are first issued and delivered and continuing until no Bonds are Outstanding, the Institution shall deliver to the Trustee for deposit in accordance with the provisions of the Resolution summarized in Appendix D under the heading “**Deposit of Revenues and Allocation Thereof,**” all Pledged Revenues within ten (10) days following the Institution’s receipt thereof unless and until there is on deposit in the Debt Service Fund an amount at least equal to the sum of (i) the interest coming due on or prior to the earlier of the next succeeding January 1 or July 1, assuming that Variable Interest Rate Bonds will, from and after the next succeeding date on which the rates at which such Variable Interest Rate Bonds bear interest are to be determined, bear interest at a rate per annum equal to the rate per annum at which such Variable Interest Rate Bonds then bear interest, plus one percent (1%) per annum, (ii) the principal and Sinking Fund Installments of Outstanding Bonds payable on and prior to the next succeeding July 1, and (iii) the Redemption Price or purchase price of Outstanding Bonds theretofore called for redemption or contracted to be purchased (other than Option Bonds tendered or deemed to have been tendered for purchase or redemption), and accrued interest thereon to the date of redemption or purchase. In the event that, pursuant to the Loan Agreement, the Authority notifies the Institution that account debtors are to make payments directly to the Authority or to the Trustee, such payments shall be made directly to the Authority or the Trustee notwithstanding anything contained in this subdivision, but the Institution shall continue to deliver to the Trustee for deposit in accordance with the provisions of the Resolution summarized in Appendix D under the heading “**Deposit of Revenues and Allocation Thereof,**” any payments received by the Institution with respect to the Pledged Revenues.

Notwithstanding anything to the contrary in the provisions of the Loan Agreement summarized in the preceding paragraph, in the event that, on or prior to the date on which a payment is to be made pursuant to the Loan Agreement on account of the principal, Sinking Fund Installments or Redemption Price of or interest on Outstanding Bonds, the Institution has made such payment from its general funds or from any other money legally available to it for such purpose, the Institution shall not be required solely by virtue of the provisions of the Loan Agreement summarized in the preceding paragraph, to deliver Pledged Revenues to the Trustee.

Any Pledged Revenues collected by the Institution that are not required to be paid to the Trustee pursuant to the Loan Agreement shall be free and clear of the security interest granted by the Loan Agreement and may be disposed of by the Institution for any of its corporate purposes provided that no Event of Default (as defined in the Loan Agreement) nor any event which but for the passage of time or the receipt of notice or both would be an Event of Default has occurred and is continuing.

(Section 12)

Mortgages; Lien on Fixtures, Furnishings and Equipment

If required, at or before the delivery by the Authority of the Bonds, the Institution shall execute and deliver to the Authority the Mortgage, in recordable form, mortgaging the Mortgaged Property acceptable to the Authority, which Mortgage shall constitute a first lien on the Mortgaged Property, subject only to the Permitted Encumbrances.

(Section 13)

Warranty of Title; Utilities and Access

The Institution warrants and represents to the Authority that (i) it has good and marketable title to the Project and all Mortgaged Property, free and clear of liens and encumbrances, except Permitted Encumbrances, so as to permit it to have quiet enjoyment and use thereof for purposes of the Loan Agreement and the Institution’s programs and (ii) the Institution has such rights of way, easements or other rights in land as may be reasonably necessary for ingress and egress to and from the Project for proper operation and utilization of the Project and all Mortgaged Property and for utilities required to serve the Project and all Mortgaged Property, together with such rights of way, easements or other rights in, to and over land as may be necessary for construction by the Institution of the Project.

The Institution warrants, represents and covenants that the Project and the Mortgaged Property from and after the time the Authority is granted a security interest therein (i) is and will be kept free from any encumbrances, liens or commitments of any kind, other than Permitted Encumbrances, (ii) is and will be serviced by all necessary utilities (including, to the extent applicable, without limitation, electricity, gas, water, sewer, steam, heating, air-conditioning and ventilation) and (iii) to the extent applicable, has and will have its own separate and independent means of access, apart from any other property owned by the Institution or others; **provided, however**, that such access may be through common roads or walks owned by the Institution used also for other parcels owned by the Institution.

(Section 14)

Additional Representation and Covenants

The Institution warrants and represents that (i) it has the requisite power and authority (A) to authorize, execute and deliver, and to perform its obligations under, the Loan Agreement, the Mortgage and the Related Agreements, (B) to incur the indebtedness contemplated by the Loan Agreement and thereby and (C) to make the pledge of and grant the security interest in the Pledged Revenues given by the Loan Agreement and to mortgage any Mortgaged Property, (ii) the Loan Agreement and the Related Agreements constitute valid and binding obligations of the Institution enforceable in accordance with their terms and (iii) the execution and delivery of, consummation of the transaction contemplated by and performance of the Institution's obligations under the Loan Agreement and each of the Related Agreements, including, but not limited to, the pledge of and security interest in the Pledged Revenues and the Government Obligations and Exempt Obligations made or granted pursuant to the Loan Agreement and the mortgaging of the Mortgaged Property, do not violate, conflict with or constitute a default under the charter or by-laws of the Institution or any indenture, mortgage, trust, or other commitment or agreement to which the Institution is a party or by which it or any of its properties are bound, or any existing law, rule, regulation, judgment, order, writ, injunction or decree of any governmental authority, body, agency or other instrumentality or court having jurisdiction over the Institution or any of its properties.

The Institution warrants, represents and covenants (i) that the Pledged Revenues are and will be free and clear of any pledge, lien, charge, security interest or encumbrance thereon or with respect thereto, prior to, or of equal rank with, the pledge thereof made pursuant to the Loan Agreement and (ii) that all corporate action on the part of the Institution to authorize the pledge thereof and the granting of a security interest therein has been duly and validly taken. The Institution further covenants that it shall at all times, to the extent permitted by law, defend, preserve and protect such pledge and security interest and all of the rights of the Authority and the Holders of Bonds under the Loan Agreement against all claims and demands of all persons whomsoever.

(Section 16)

Tax-Exempt Status of Institution

The Institution represents that: (i) it is an organization described in Section 501(c)(3) of the Code, or corresponding provisions of prior law, and is not a "private foundation," as such term is defined under Section 509(a) of the Code; (ii) it has received a letter or other notification from the Internal Revenue Service to that effect; (iii) such letter or other notification has not been modified, limited or revoked; (iv) it is in compliance with all terms, conditions and limitations, if any, contained in such letter or other notification; (v) the facts and circumstances which form the basis of such letter or other notification as represented to the Internal Revenue Service continue to exist; and (vi) it is exempt from federal income taxes under Section 501(a) of the Code, except for payment of unrelated business income tax. The Institution agrees that: (a) it shall not perform any act or enter into any agreement which shall adversely affect such federal income tax status and shall conduct its operations in the manner which will conform to the standards necessary to qualify the Institution as an educational organization within the meaning of Section 501(c)(3) of the Code or any successor provision of federal income tax law; and (b) it shall not perform any act, enter into any agreement or use or permit the Project to be used in a manner, or for any trade or business unrelated to the educational purposes of the Institution, which could adversely affect the exclusion of interest on the Bonds from federal gross income pursuant to Section 103 of the Code.

(Section 17)

Appendix C

Securities Acts Status

The Institution represents that: (i) it is an organization organized and operated (A) exclusively for educational or charitable purposes and (B) not for pecuniary profit; and (ii) no part of the net earnings of which inures to the benefit of any person, private stockholder or individual, all within the meaning, respectively, of the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, and the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended. The Institution agrees that it shall not perform any act or enter into any agreement which shall adversely affect such status as set forth in the Loan Agreement.

(Section 18)

Maintenance of Corporate Existence

The Institution covenants that it will (i) maintain its corporate existence, (ii) continue to operate as a non-profit educational organization, (iii) obtain, maintain and keep in full force and effect such governmental approvals, consents, licenses, permits and accreditation as may be necessary for it to continue to so operate, (iv) except as expressly permitted by the Loan Agreement, not dissolve or otherwise dispose of all or substantially all of its assets or consolidate with or merge into another person or permit one or more persons to consolidate with or merge into it. The Institution, with the prior written consent of the Authority, may (A) sell or otherwise transfer all or substantially all of its assets to, or consolidate with or merge into, another organization or corporation which qualifies as an organization described in Section 501(c)(3) of the Code, or any successor provision of federal income tax law, (B) permit one or more corporations or any other organization to consolidate with or merge into it, or (C) acquire all or substantially all of the assets of one or more corporations or other organizations. Notwithstanding the foregoing provisions, no disposition, transfer, consolidation or merger otherwise permitted by the Loan Agreement shall be permitted unless (1) the same would not in the opinion of Bond Counsel adversely affect the exclusion of interest on any Bond from gross income for purposes of federal income taxation, (2) the Institution will not as a result thereof be in default under the Loan Agreement or under any Related Agreement, (3) the surviving, resulting or transferee corporation, as the case may be, is incorporated under the laws of the State and is qualified as an organization described in Section 501(c)(3) of the Code or any successor provision of federal income tax law, and (4) the surviving, resulting or transferee corporation of the Institution assumes in writing all of the obligations of the Institution under the Loan Agreement, under the Continuing Disclosure Agreement, the Mortgage and under the Related Agreements and furnishes to the Authority (x) a certificate to the effect that upon such sale, transfer, consolidation, merger or acquisition such corporation will be in compliance with each of the provisions of the Loan Agreement and of the Related Agreements, and will meet the requirements of the Act, and (y) such other certificates and documents as the Authority may reasonably require to establish compliance with the Loan Agreement.

(Section 19)

Environmental Quality Review and Historic Preservation

For the purpose of assisting the Authority in making any findings or determinations which might be required by (i) Article 8 of the New York Environmental Conservation Law and the regulations promulgated thereunder (collectively, "SEQR") or (ii) the New York State Historic Preservation Act of 1980 and the regulations promulgated thereunder (collectively the "Preservation Act"), the Institution agrees to abide by the requirements relating thereto as set forth in the Loan Agreement.

(Section 20)

Use and Possession of the Project

Subject to the rights, duties and remedies of the Authority under the Loan Agreement, the Institution shall have sole and exclusive control and possession of and responsibility for (i) the Project and any Mortgaged Property, (ii) the operation of the Project and the Mortgaged Property and supervision of the activities conducted therein or in connection with any part thereof and (iii) the maintenance, repair and replacement of the Project and the Mortgaged Property; **provided, however,** that, except as otherwise limited by the Loan Agreement, the foregoing shall not

prohibit use of the Project and the Mortgaged Property by persons other than the Institution or its students, staff or employees in furtherance of the Institution's corporate purposes, if such use will not adversely affect the exclusion of interest on any Bonds from gross income for federal income tax purposes.

(Section 21)

Sale of the Project

The Institution covenants that it will not transfer, sell or convey the Project or any part thereof or interest therein, including development rights, without the prior approval of the Authority, unless (a) in the opinion of Bond Counsel, the same will not adversely affect the exclusion of interest on any Bond from gross income for federal income tax purposes and (b) the Institution pays to the Trustee either for deposit into the Debt Service Fund, or, pursuant to the Resolution, to be set aside or to purchase Defeasance Securities in accordance with the direction of the Authority.

Notwithstanding the foregoing, the Institution may remove equipment, furniture or fixtures that is part of the Project and was financed with the proceeds of Bonds provided that the Institution substitutes for such equipment, furniture or fixtures additional equipment, furniture or fixtures having a value and utility at least equal to the equipment, furniture or fixtures removed or replaced.

(Section 23)

Maintenance, Repair and Replacement

The Institution agrees that, throughout the term of the Loan Agreement, it shall, at its own expense, hold, operate and maintain the Project and any Mortgaged Property in a careful, prudent and economical manner, and keep the same, with the appurtenances and every part and parcel thereof, in good repair, working order and safe condition and shall from time to time make all necessary and proper repairs, replacements and renewals so that at all times the operation thereof may be properly and advantageously conducted. The Institution shall give the Authority not less than fifteen (15) days prior written notice of its intention to make a change or alteration that materially alters the scope or nature of the Project or any Mortgaged Property or a portion thereof. The Institution shall have the right to remove or replace any type of fixtures, furnishings and equipment in the Project or the Mortgaged Property which may have been financed by the proceeds of the sale of Bonds provided the Institution substitutes for any such removed or replaced fixtures, furnishings and equipment, additional fixtures, furnishings and equipment having equal or greater value and utility than the fixtures, furnishings and equipment so removed or replaced.

The Institution further agrees that it shall pay at its own expense all extraordinary costs of maintaining, repairing and replacing the Project or the Mortgaged Property except insofar as funds are made available therefor from proceeds of insurance, condemnation or eminent domain awards.

(Section 24)

Covenant as to Insurance

The Institution agrees to maintain or cause to be maintained insurance with insurance companies or by means or self-insurance, insurance of such type, against such risks and in such amounts as are customarily carried by private colleges and universities located in the State of a nature similar to that of the Institution, which insurance shall include property damage, fire and extended coverage, public liability and property damage liability insurance in amounts estimated to indemnify the reasonably anticipated damage, loss or liability, subject to reasonable deductible provisions. The Institution shall at all times also maintain worker's compensation coverage and disability benefits insurance coverage as required by the laws of the State.

(Section 25)

Appendix C

Damage or Condemnation

In the event of a taking of the Project or any Mortgaged Property or any portion thereof by eminent domain or condemnation, or of damage or destruction affecting all or part thereof, all property casualty insurance, condemnation or eminent domain proceeds shall, if in excess of \$250,000 and not applied to reimburse the Institution for costs incurred to repair or restore the same, be paid to the Trustee for deposit in the Construction Fund. All proceeds derived from an award for such taking or from property casualty insurance shall be applied as provided below.

(i) If within one hundred twenty (120) days (or such longer period as the Authority and the Institution may agree) after the Authority receives actual notice or knowledge of the taking or damage, the Institution and the Authority agree in writing that the property or the affected portion thereof shall be repaired, replaced or restored, the Institution shall proceed to repair, replace or restore the same, or the affected portion thereof, including all fixtures, furniture, equipment and effects, to its original condition insofar as possible with such changes and additions as shall be appropriate to the needs of the Institution and approved in writing by the Authority. The funds required for such repair, replacement or restoration shall be paid, subject to such conditions and limitations as the Authority may impose, from the proceeds of insurance, condemnation or eminent domain awards received by reason of such occurrence and to the extent such proceeds are not sufficient, from funds to be provided by the Institution.

(ii) If no agreement for the repair, restoration or replacement of the property or affected portion shall have been reached by the Authority and the Institution within such period, the proceeds then held by the Institution shall be paid the Trustee for deposit in the Debt Service Fund and the proceeds then held in the Construction Fund shall be transferred to the Debt Service Fund, whereupon such proceeds shall be applied to the purchase or redemption of Outstanding Bonds.

(Section 26)

Taxes and Assessments

The Institution shall pay when due at its own expense, and hold the Authority harmless from, all taxes, assessments, water and sewer charges and other impositions, if any, which may be levied or assessed upon the Project, the Mortgaged Property or any part thereof, and upon all ordinary costs of operating, maintaining, repairing and replacing such Project, the Mortgaged Property and its equipment. The Institution shall file exemption certificates as required by law. The Institution agrees to exhibit to an Authorized Officer of the Authority within ten (10) days after written demand by the Authority, certificates or receipts issued by the appropriate authority showing full payment of all taxes, assessments, water and sewer charges and other impositions; **provided, however**, that the good faith contest of such impositions shall be deemed to be complete compliance with the requirements of the Loan Agreement if the Institution sets aside such reserves as may be required by good accounting practice. Notwithstanding the foregoing, the Authority in its sole discretion, after notice in writing to the Institution, may pay any such charges, taxes and assessments if, in the reasonable judgment of the Authority, the Project, the Mortgaged Property or any part thereof would be in substantial danger by reason of the Institution's failure to pay such charges, taxes and assessments of being sold, attached, forfeited, foreclosed, transferred, conveyed, assigned or otherwise subjected to any proceeding, equitable remedy, lien, charge, fee or penalty that would impair (i) the interests or security of the Authority under the Loan Agreement or under the Resolution or the Mortgage; (ii) the ability of the Authority to enforce its rights thereunder; (iii) the ability of the Authority to fulfill the terms of any covenants or perform any of its obligations under the Loan Agreement or under the Resolution or the Mortgage; or (iv) the ability of the Institution to fulfill the terms of any covenants or perform any of its obligations under the Loan Agreement and the Institution agrees to reimburse the Authority for any such payment, with interest thereon from the date payment was made by the Authority at a rate equal to the highest rate of interest payable on any investment held for the Debt Service Fund on the date such payment was made by the Authority.

(Section 27)

Defaults and Remedies

As used in the Loan Agreement the term “**Event of Default**” shall mean:

(i) the Institution shall (A) default in the timely payment of any amount payable pursuant to the Loan Agreement (other than as described in subsection (B) below) or the payment of any other amounts required to be delivered or paid by or on behalf of the Institution in accordance with the Loan Agreement or with the Resolution or the Series Resolution, and such default continues for a period in excess of seven (7) days or (B) default in the timely payment of interest payable on Outstanding Variable Interest Rate Bonds or the purchase price of Option Bonds tendered for purchase, in accordance with the terms of the Loan Agreement; or

(ii) the Institution defaults in the due and punctual performance of any other covenant contained in the Loan Agreement and such default continues for thirty (30) days after written notice requiring the same to be remedied shall have been given to the Institution by the Authority or the Trustee or, if such default is not capable of being cured within thirty (30) days, the Institution fails to commence within said thirty (30) days to cure the same and to diligently prosecute the cure thereof; or

(iii) as a result of any default in payment or performance required of the Institution under the Loan Agreement or any other Event of Default under the Loan Agreement, whether or not declared, continuing or cured, the Authority shall be in default in the payment or performance of any of its obligations under the Resolution or an “event of default” (as defined in the Resolution) shall have been declared under the Resolution so long as such default or event of default shall remain uncured or the Trustee or Holders of the Bonds shall be seeking the enforcement of any remedy under the Resolution as a result thereof; or

(iv) the Institution shall (A) be generally not paying its debts as they become due, (B) file, or consent by answer or otherwise to the filing against it of, a petition under the United States Bankruptcy Code or under any other bankruptcy or insolvency law of any jurisdiction, (C) make a general assignment for the benefit of its general creditors, (D) consent to the appointment of a custodian, receiver, trustee or other officer with similar powers of itself or of any substantial part of its property, (E) be adjudicated insolvent or be liquidated or (F) take corporate action for the purpose of any of the foregoing; or

(v) a court or governmental authority of competent jurisdiction shall enter an order appointing, without consent by the Institution, a custodian, receiver, trustee or other officer with similar powers with respect to it or with respect to any substantial part of its property, or an order for relief shall be entered in any case or proceeding for liquidation or reorganization or otherwise to take advantage of any bankruptcy or insolvency law of any jurisdiction, or ordering the dissolution, winding-up or liquidation of the Institution, or any petition for any such relief shall be filed against the Institution and such petition shall not be dismissed or stayed within ninety (90) days; or

(vi) the charter of the Institution shall be suspended or revoked; or

(vii) a petition to dissolve the Institution shall be filed by the Institution with the Board of Regents of the University of the State of New York, the legislature of the State or other governmental authority having jurisdiction over the Institution; or

(viii) an order of dissolution of the Institution shall be made by the Board of Regents of the University of the State of New York, the legislature of the State or other governmental authority having jurisdiction over the Institution, which order shall remain undismissed or unstayed for an aggregate of thirty (30) days; or

Appendix C

(ix) a petition shall be filed with a court having jurisdiction for an order directing or providing for the sale, disposition or distribution of all or substantially all of the property belonging to the Institution which petition shall remain undismissed or unstayed for an aggregate of ninety (90) days; or

(x) an order of a court having jurisdiction shall be entered directing or providing for the sale, disposition or distribution of all or substantially all of the property belonging to the Institution, which order shall remain undismissed or unstayed for the earlier of (A) three (3) business days prior to the date provided for in such order for such sale, disposition or distribution or (B) an aggregate of thirty (30) days from the date such order shall have been entered; or

(xi) a final judgment for the payment of money, at least one million dollars (\$1,000,000) of which is not covered by insurance or reserves set aside by the Institution, which in the judgment of the Authority will adversely affect the rights of the Holders of the Bonds shall be rendered against the Institution and at any time after forty-five (45) days from the entry thereof, (A) such judgment shall not have been discharged or paid, or (B) the Institution shall not have taken and be diligently prosecuting an appeal therefrom or from the order, decree or process upon which or pursuant to which such judgment shall have been granted or entered, and shall not have caused, within forty-five (45) days, the execution of or levy under such judgment, order, decree or process or the enforcement thereof to have been stayed pending determination of such appeal; or

(xii) the occurrence and continuance of an event of default under the Mortgage.

Upon the occurrence of an Event of Default the Authority may take any one or more of the following actions:

(i) declare all sums payable by the Institution under the Loan Agreement immediately due and payable;

(ii) direct the Trustee to withhold any and all payments, advances and reimbursements from the proceeds of Bonds or the Construction Fund or otherwise to which the Institution may otherwise be entitled under the Loan Agreement and in the Authority's sole discretion apply any such proceeds or moneys for such purposes as are authorized by the Resolution;

(iii) withhold any or all further performance under the Loan Agreement;

(iv) maintain an action against the Institution under the Loan Agreement to recover any sums payable by the Institution or to require its compliance with the terms of the Loan Agreement or of the Mortgage;

(v) realize upon any pledge of or security interest in the Pledged Revenues and the rights to receive the same, all to the extent provided in the Loan Agreement, by any one or more of the following actions: (A) enter the Institution and examine and make copies of the financial books and records of the Institution relating to the Pledged Revenues and, to the extent of the assigned Pledged Revenues, take possession of all checks or other orders for payment of money and moneys in the possession of the Institution representing Pledged Revenues or proceeds thereof; (B) notify any account debtors obligated on any Pledged Revenues to make payment directly to the Authority or to the Trustee, as the Authority may direct, and of the amount to be so paid; **provided, however,** that (1) the Authority may, in its discretion, immediately collect the entire amount of interest, principal, or Sinking Fund Installments, if any, coming due on Outstanding Bonds on the next interest payment date therefor and may continue to do so commencing on each such interest payment date to the extent of amounts due on Outstanding Bonds on the next interest payment date therefor, with respect to the Pledged Revenues, until such amounts are fully collected, (2) written notice of such notification shall be mailed to the Institution five (5) days

prior to mailing or otherwise making such notification to account debtors and (3) until the Institution shall receive such notice it shall have full authority and responsibility to enforce and collect Pledged Revenues owing from its account debtors; (C) following the above mentioned notification to account debtors, collect, compromise, settle, compound or extend amounts payable as Pledged Revenues which are in the form of accounts receivable or contract rights from the Institution's account debtors by suit or other means and give a full acquittance therefor and receipt therefor in the name of the Institution whether or not the full amount of any such account receivable or contract right owing shall be paid to the Authority; (D) require the Institution to deposit all moneys, checks or other orders for the payment of money which represent Pledged Revenues in an amount equal to the Pledged Revenues assigned under the Loan Agreement within five (5) business days after receipt of written notice of such requirement, and thereafter as received, into a fund or account to be established for such purpose by the Authority; **provided, however,** that (1) the moneys in such fund or account shall be applied by the Authority to the payment of any of the obligations of the Institution under the Loan Agreement, including the fees and expenses of the Authority, (2) the Authority in its sole discretion may authorize the Institution to make withdrawals from such fund or account for its corporate purposes and (3) the requirement to make such deposits shall cease and the balance of such fund or account shall be paid to the Institution when all Events of Default under the Loan Agreement by the Institution have been cured; (E) forbid the Institution to extend, compromise, compound or settle any accounts receivable or contract rights which represent any unpaid assigned Pledged Revenues, or release, wholly or partly, any person liable for the payment thereof (except upon receipt of the full amount due) or allow any credit or discount thereon; or (F) endorse in the name of the Institution any checks or other orders for the payment of money representing any unpaid assigned Pledged Revenues or the proceeds thereof;

(vi) to the extent permitted by law, (A) enter upon the Project and complete the construction thereof in accordance with the plans and specifications with such changes therein as the Authority may deem appropriate and employ watchmen to protect the Project, all at the risk, cost and expense of the Institution, consent to such entry being by the Loan Agreement given by the Institution, (B) at any time discontinue any work commenced in respect of the construction of the Project or change any course of action undertaken by the Institution and not be bound by any limitations or requirements of time whether set forth in the Loan Agreement or otherwise, (C) assume any construction contract made by the Institution in any way relating to the construction of the Project and take over and use all or any part of the labor, materials, supplies and equipment contracted for by the Institution, whether or not previously incorporated into the construction of the Project, and (D) in connection with the construction of the Project undertaken by the Authority pursuant to the provisions summarized in this subparagraph (vi), (1) engage builders, contractors, architects, engineers and others for the purpose of furnishing labor, materials and equipment in connection with the construction of such Project, (2) pay, settle or compromise all bills or claims which may become liens against the Project or against any moneys of the Authority applicable to the construction of such Project, or which have been or may be incurred in any manner in connection with completing the construction of the Project or for the discharge of liens, encumbrances or defects in the title to the Project or against any moneys of the Authority applicable to the construction of such Project, and (3) take or refrain from taking such action under the Loan Agreement as the Authority may from time to time determine. The Institution shall be liable to the Authority for all sums paid or incurred for construction of the Project whether the same shall be paid or incurred pursuant to the provisions summarized in this subparagraph (vi) or otherwise, and all payments made or liabilities incurred by the Authority under the Loan Agreement of any kind whatsoever shall be paid by the Institution to the Authority upon demand. The Institution irrevocably constitutes and appoints the Authority its true and lawful attorney-in-fact to execute, acknowledge and deliver any instruments and to do and perform any acts in the name and on behalf of the Institution for the purpose of exercising the rights granted to the Authority by provisions summarized in this subparagraph (vi) during the term of the Loan Agreement;

Appendix C

(vii) permit, direct or request the Trustee to liquidate all or any portion of the assets of the Debt Service Reserve Fund by selling the same at public or private sale in any commercially reasonable manner and apply the proceeds thereof and any dividends or interest received on investments thereof to the payment of the principal, Sinking Fund Installments, if any, or Redemption Price of and interest on Bonds, or any other obligation or liability of the Institution or the Authority arising from the Loan Agreement, or from the Resolution;

(viii) realize upon any security interest in the fixtures, furnishings and equipment, including any one or more of the following actions: (i) enter the Project or the Mortgaged Property and take possession of any such fixtures, furnishings and equipment; (ii) sell, lease or otherwise dispose of any such fixtures, furnishings and equipment either together with a sale, lease or other disposition of the Mortgaged Property pursuant to the Loan Agreement or to the Mortgage, or separately, whether or not possession has been secured; **provided, however**, that if sold, leased or otherwise disposed of separately, such sale, lease or other disposition shall be in commercially reasonable manner and upon five (5) days prior written notice to the Institution of the time and place of such sale; and

(ix) take any action necessary to enable the Authority to realize on its liens under the Loan Agreement or under any Mortgage or by law, and any other action or proceeding permitted by the terms of the Loan Agreement or by law.

All rights and remedies in the Loan Agreement given or granted to the Authority are cumulative, non-exclusive and in addition to any and all rights and remedies that the Authority may have or may be given by reason of any law, statute, ordinance or otherwise, and no failure to exercise or delay in exercising any remedy shall effect a waiver of the Authority's right to exercise such remedy thereafter.

At any time before the entry of a final judgment or decree in any suit, action or proceeding instituted on account of any Event of Default or before the completion of the enforcement of any other remedies under the Loan Agreement, the Authority may annul any declaration made pursuant to the Loan Agreement and its consequences if such Event of Default shall be cured. No such annulment shall extend to or affect any subsequent default or impair any right consequent thereto.

(Section 31)

Investment of Moneys

The Institution acknowledges that the Authority may in its sole discretion direct the investment of certain moneys held under the Resolution and the Series Resolution as provided therein and that no representation or warranty has been made by the Authority with respect to interest rates on, or the amount to be earned as a result of, any such investment. Neither the Authority nor the Trustee shall have any liability arising out of or in connection with the making of any investment authorized by the provisions of the Resolution summarized in Appendix D under the heading "**Security for Deposits and Investment of Funds**" in the manner provided therein, or for any loss, direct or indirect, resulting from any such investment. The Authority agrees that it shall direct the making of investments as permitted by the Resolution as soon as practicable when moneys are legally available therefor.

(Section 33)

Limitation on Agreements

The Institution shall not enter into any contract or agreement which impairs the Institution's ability to comply with the provisions of the Loan Agreement relating to financial obligations of the Institution in any material respect.

(Section 35)

Arbitrage; Tax Exemption

Each of the Institution and the Authority covenants that it shall take no action, nor shall it approve the Trustee's taking any action or making any investment or use of the proceeds of the Bonds, which would cause the Bonds to be "arbitrage bonds" within the meaning of Section 148(a) of the Code, and any proposed or final regulations thereunder as are applicable to the Bonds at the time of such action, investment or use. Neither the Institution (nor any "related person", as such term is defined for purposes of Section 148 of the Code) shall purchase Bonds other than for delivery to and cancellation by the Trustee, unless the Trustee shall receive an opinion of Bond Counsel to the effect that the purchase by the Institution or by a related person of Bonds will not cause interest on the Bonds to be included in the gross income of the owners of such Bonds for purpose of federal income taxation.

The Institution covenants that it will not take any action or fail to take any action which would cause any representation or warranty of the Institution contained in the Tax Certificate then to be untrue and shall comply with all covenants and agreements of the Institution contained in the Tax Certificate, in each case to the extent required by and otherwise in compliance with such Tax Certificate.

(Section 36)

Certificate as to Representations and Warranties

The obligations of the Authority under the Loan Agreement and the delivery of the Bonds are conditioned upon the receipt by the Authority at or prior to delivery the Bonds of a certificate of an Authorized Officer of the Institution acceptable to the Authority to the effect that the representations and warranties contained in the Loan Agreement are true and correct and in full force and effect on and as of the date of delivery of the Bonds as if made on the date of delivery of the Bonds.

(Section 40)

Further Assurances

The Institution, at any and all times, shall, so far as it may be authorized by law, pass, make, do, execute, acknowledge and deliver, all and every such further resolutions, acts, deeds, conveyances, assignments, transfers and assurances as are necessary or desirable for the better assuring, conveying, granting, assigning and confirming all and singular the rights, the Pledged Revenues, moneys, securities, funds and security interests by the Loan Agreement or by the Resolution pledged, assigned or granted, or intended so to be, or which the Institution may after the date of the Loan Agreement become bound to pledge, assign or grant to the Authority pursuant to the Loan Agreement.

(Section 43)

Amendments to Loan Agreement

The Loan Agreement may be amended only in accordance with the Resolution and each amendment shall be made by an instrument in writing signed by the Institution and the Authority, an executed counterpart of which shall be filed with the Trustee.

(Section 44)

Termination

Except as otherwise set forth therein, the Loan Agreement shall remain in full force and effect until no Bonds are Outstanding and until all other payments, expenses and fees payable under the Loan Agreement by the Institution shall have been made or provision made for the payment thereof. Upon such termination, the Authority shall promptly deliver such documents as may be reasonably requested by the Institution to evidence such

Appendix C

termination and the discharge of the Institution's duties under the Loan agreement and the release or surrender of any security interests granted by the Institution to the Authority pursuant to the Loan Agreement.

(Section 45)

Maintenance Covenants

A. Debt Service Coverage Ratio Covenant

(i) **The Debt Service Coverage Ratio Requirement.** The Institution covenants to charge and maintain during each Fiscal Year, student tuition, fees and other charges sufficient to provide a Debt Service Coverage Ratio of 1.25:1 for Fiscal Years ending in 2011 and thereafter.

(ii) **Reporting Requirement.** On or prior to each Reporting Date, the Institution shall file with the Authority a certificate of an Authorized Officer of the Institution stating whether at the immediately preceding Testing Date the Debt Service Coverage Ratio requirement is satisfied and setting forth the calculation upon which such statement is based.

(iii) **Remedies.** If (a) on two consecutive Testing Dates the Institution does not satisfy the Debt Service Coverage Ratio requirement, or (b) on any Testing Date the Debt Service Coverage Ratio falls below 1:1, the Authority may require the Institution to retain a Management Consultant or may accept a report provided by the Institution explaining the cause of the Institution's noncompliance with the Debt Service Coverage Ratio requirement and the steps the Institution plans to take to bring the Institution back into compliance with such requirement

B. Unrestricted Resources to Debt Ratio Covenant

(i) **The Unrestricted Resources to Debt Ratio Requirement.** The Institution covenants to have available on each Testing Date, Unrestricted Resources at least equal to: 60% of the Institution's Long-Term Indebtedness as of the Testing Date for the Institution's Fiscal Years ending in 2011 through and including 2012; and 75% of the Institution's Long-Term Indebtedness as of the Testing Date for the Institution's Fiscal Years ending in 2013 and thereafter.

(ii) **Reporting Requirement.** On or prior to each Reporting Date, the Institution shall file with the Authority a certificate of an Authorized Officer of the Institution stating whether at the immediately preceding Testing Date the Unrestricted Resources to Debt Ratio requirement is satisfied and setting forth the calculation upon which such statement is based.

(iii) **Remedies.** If on any Testing Date the Institution does not satisfy the Unrestricted Resources to Debt Ratio requirement, the Authority may require the Institution to retain a Management Consultant or may accept a report provided by the Institution explaining the cause of the Institution's noncompliance with the Unrestricted Resources to Debt Ratio requirement and the steps the Institution plans to take to bring the Institution back into compliance with such requirement.

(Section 2 of Schedule D)

Management Consultant Call-In

A. **Optional Management Consultant Call-In.** If the Authority elects to require the Institution to retain the services of a Management Consultant in accordance with Section 2A(iii) or 2B(iii) of Schedule D to the Loan Agreement, then the Authority shall, at its election which shall be exercised in writing within sixty (60) days of notice of the applicable covenant failure, request the Institution to engage, at the Institution's expense, a Management Consultant to review the fees and tuition, operations and management of the Institution and/or any other matter deemed appropriate by the Authority and to make such recommendations with respect to such fees and tuition, operations, management and other matters as will enable the Institution to comply with such covenants

within a reasonable period. The Institution shall engage a Management Consultant within sixty (60) days of such request by the Authority.

B. Compliance With Recommendations. Whenever a Management Consultant is required to be engaged by the Institution pursuant to Schedule D to the Loan Agreement, copies of the report and recommendations of such Management Consultant shall be filed with the Authority, the Trustee, the Board of Trustees of the Institution and an Authorized Officer of the Institution no later than one hundred twenty (120) days following the date of the engagement of such Management Consultant. The Institution shall, to the extent feasible, promptly upon its receipt of such recommendations, and subject to applicable requirements or restrictions imposed by law or regulation, revise its tuition, fees and charges, its methods of operation or collections of its debt and investment management and shall take such other action as shall be in conformity with such recommendations. The Institution shall deliver to the Authority and the Trustee within forty-five (45) days of receipt of such Management Consultant's report; (A) a report setting forth in reasonable detail the steps the Institution proposes to take to implement the recommendations of such Management Consultant; and (B) a certified copy of a resolution adopted by the Board of Trustees of the Institution accepting both the Management Consultant's report and the report prepared by the Institution as required in clause (A) hereof; and, subsequently, (C) quarterly reports demonstrating the progress made by the Institution in implementing the recommendations of the Management Consultant.

If the Institution complies in all material respects with the reasonable recommendations of the Management Consultant, the Institution will be deemed to have complied with the covenants contained in Section 2 of Schedule D to the Loan Agreement for the Institution's Fiscal Year in which the Management Consultant's report is delivered.

(Section 3 of Schedule D)

Additional Indebtedness

Except as otherwise provided below, the Institution will not after the date of execution of the Loan Agreement issue, incur, assume or guarantee any Indebtedness without the prior written consent of the Authority.

A. Long-Term Indebtedness

The Institution may issue, incur, assume or guarantee Long-Term Indebtedness without the consent of the Authority provided that (i) it maintains a debt rating in the "Baa/BBB" category (without regard to qualification of such ratings by symbols such as "+" or "-" and numerical notation) from at least one Rating Service **and** (ii) (a) such Long-Term Indebtedness issued in any Fiscal Year is in an amount less than or equal to ten percent (10%) of the amount of its unrestricted net assets as reported for the most recently concluded Fiscal Year for which audited financial statements are available **or** (b) the Institution provides to the Authority a certificate of an Authorized Officer of the Institution containing pro forma calculations demonstrating that the maintenance covenants described in Section 2 of Schedule D to the Loan Agreement would be met for the most recently concluded Fiscal Year for which audited financial statements are available taking into account the additional Long-Term Indebtedness proposed to be issued.

For purposes of calculating the Debt Service Coverage Ratio for such pro forma calculations, Annual Debt Service shall be equal to projected Maximum Annual Debt Service. Indebtedness which does not bear interest at a fixed rate will be deemed to bear interest at an annual rate equal to 120% of the weighted average annual interest rate borne by such Indebtedness over the 24-month period ending on the date of calculation (or with respect to such Long-Term Indebtedness issued during such 24-month period, 120% of the average of the most recent 24-month Bond Buyer 25 Revenue Bond Index). The principal of Balloon Indebtedness will be deemed to mature in equal annual installments over a term equal to the lesser of 20 years or the actual term of such Indebtedness. In the event the project to be financed with such additional Long-Term Indebtedness is reasonably expected to generate additional revenues, such revenues, net of anticipated expenses, may be included in the pro forma calculations of the Debt Service Coverage Ratio.

Appendix C

B. Refunding Debt

The Institution may issue, incur, assume or guarantee Refunding Debt without the consent of the Authority or compliance with the requirements of paragraph A of Section 4 of Schedule D to the Loan Agreement summarized herein provided that, after giving effect to such Refunding Debt, the Maximum Annual Debt Service on the Institution's Long-Term Indebtedness will not be greater in any Fiscal Year as established by a certificate or report to that effect of an independent certified accountant delivered to the Authority on or prior to the date such Refunding Debt is issued, incurred, assumed or guaranteed.

C. Non-Recourse Indebtedness

Notwithstanding the foregoing, the Institution may issue Non-Recourse Indebtedness without the Authority's consent provided that the property securing such Non-Recourse Indebtedness was acquired by the Institution after the issuance of the Series 2010 Bonds.

D. Short-Term Indebtedness

The Institution may incur Short-Term Indebtedness without the Authority's consent if, with respect to such indebtedness, during any twelve (12) month period, there will be no outstanding balance for a period of not less than thirty (30) days or such shorter period as may be consented to by the Authority.

E. Parity Indebtedness

Any Indebtedness that is to be secured by any collateral securing the Series 2010 Bonds shall be subject to the conclusion and prior execution of an inter-creditor agreement by the Authority and any other parties with an interest in such collateral that is to be shared on a parity with such Indebtedness.

(Section 4 of Schedule D)

**SUMMARY OF CERTAIN PROVISIONS
OF THE RESOLUTION**

[THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK]

SUMMARY OF CERTAIN PROVISIONS OF THE RESOLUTION

The following is a brief summary of certain provisions of the Resolution pertaining to the Series 2010 Bonds. This summary does not purport to be complete and reference is made to the Resolution for full and complete statements of such and all provisions. The headings below are not part of the Resolution but have been added for ease of reference only. Defined terms used herein shall have the meanings ascribed to them in Appendix A or in the body of this Official Statement.

Resolution and Bonds Constitute a Contract

It is the intent of the Resolution to authorize the issuance by the Authority, from time to time, of its St. Joseph's College Revenue Bonds in one or more Series, each such Series to be authorized by a separate Series Resolution and, inter alia, to be separately secured from each other Series of Bonds. Each such Series of Bonds shall be separate and apart from any other Series of Bonds authorized by a different Series Resolution and the Holders of Bonds of such Series shall not be entitled to the rights and benefits conferred upon the Holders of Bonds of any other Series of Bonds by the respective Series Resolution authorizing such Series of Bonds. With respect to each Series of Bonds, in consideration of the purchase and acceptance of any and all of the Bonds of a Series authorized to be issued under the Resolution and under a Series Resolution by those who shall hold or own the same from time to time, the Resolution and such Series Resolution shall be deemed to be and shall constitute a contract among the Authority, the Trustee and the Holders from time to time of such Bonds of a Series, and the pledge and assignment to the Trustee made in the Resolution and the covenants and agreements set forth to be performed by or on behalf of the Authority shall be for the equal and ratable benefit, protection and security of the Holders of any and all of the Bonds of such Series, all of which, regardless of the time or times of their issue or maturity, shall be of equal rank without preference, priority or distinction of any Bonds of such Series over any other Bonds of such Series except as expressly provided in the Resolution or permitted by the Resolution or by a Series Resolution.

(Section 1.03)

Assignment of Certain Rights and Remedies to the Trustee

With respect to each Series of Bonds, as security for the payment of the principal, Sinking Fund Installments, if any, and Redemption Price of, and interest on, the Outstanding Bonds of such Series and for the performance of each other obligation of the Authority under the Resolution and under a Series Resolution, the Authority may, and upon the occurrence of an event of default under the Resolution shall, grant, pledge and assign to the Trustee all of the Authority's estate, right, title, interest and claim in, to and under the applicable Loan Agreement or any Mortgage, together with all rights, powers, security interests, privileges, options and other benefits of the Authority under the such Loan Agreement, including, without limitation, the immediate and continuing right to receive, enforce and collect (and to apply the same in accordance herewith) all Revenues, insurance proceeds, sale proceeds and other payments and other security now or hereafter payable to or receivable by the Authority under such Loan Agreement, or any Mortgage and the right to make all waivers and agreements in the name and on behalf of the Authority, as Trustee for the benefit of the Bondholders of such Series, and to perform all other necessary and appropriate acts under such Loan Agreement or any Mortgage, subject to the following conditions, that (i) that the Holders of such Bonds of a Series, if any, shall not be responsible or liable in any manner or to any extent for the performance of any of the covenants or provisions thereof to be performed by the Authority, (ii) that, unless and until the Trustee is assigned the applicable Loan Agreement and any Mortgage, the Trustee shall not be responsible or liable in any manner or to any extent for the performance of any of the covenants or provisions contained in such Loan Agreement or any Mortgage to be performed by the Authority (except to the extent of actions undertaken by the Trustee in the course of its performance of any such covenant or provision), the Authority, however, to remain liable to observe and perform all the conditions and covenants, in such Loan Agreement, provided to be observed and performed by it and (iii) that any grant, pledge and assignment of money, revenues, accounts, rights or other property of the Institution made with respect to the applicable Loan Agreement pursuant to this Section of the Resolution shall secure, in the case of such Loan Agreement, only the payment of the amounts payable under such Loan Agreement.

Appendix D

Any grant, pledge or assignment made pursuant to this Section of the Resolution shall be made by instruments in form and substance reasonably satisfactory to the Trustee executed and delivered by the Authority as soon as practicable after the occurrence of an event of default under the Resolution, but in no event more than thirty (30) days thereafter. The Trustee shall accept such grant, pledge and assignment which acceptance shall be evidenced in writing and signed by an Authorized Officer of the Trustee in form and substance reasonably satisfactory to the Authority. Upon any such grant, pledge or assignment contemplated by the Resolution the Authority may retain the right to (i) the payment of any fees, costs and expenses of the Authority payable pursuant to the applicable Loan Agreement, (ii) the indemnities provided by the Resolution and payments made pursuant to such indemnities and (iii) the exercise of any right or remedy available under such Loan Agreement or any Mortgage for the enforcement of the obligations of the Institution to which the Authority has retained such right.

If an event of default under the Resolution has been cured and is no longer continuing, the Trustee, as soon as practicable after the written request of the Authority, shall re-grant and re-assign to the Authority, and release from any pledge made by the Authority pursuant to this Section of the Resolution, all of the Authority's estate, right, title, interest and claim in, to and under a Loan Agreement or any Mortgage, together with all rights, powers, security interests, privileges, options and other benefits of the Authority under the Resolution, theretofore granted, pledged or assigned to the Trustee pursuant to this Section of the Resolution. The Trustee shall execute such instruments as the Authority may reasonably require to effect or evidence such re-grant, re-assignment or release.

If applicable, at or prior to the initial issuance and delivery of a Series of Bonds, upon delivery to the Trustee of evidence in writing from Authorized Officers of the Authority and the applicable creditors of the Institution with respect to such Series of Bonds to the effect that the Intercreditor Agreement among the Authority, such creditor(s) and the Trustee is in form and substance satisfactory to them (which may be evidenced by the execution thereof by the Authority and such creditor(s)), an Authorized Officer of the Trustee shall, upon determination by the Trustee that such Intercreditor Agreement is in form and substance satisfactory to it (which determination by the Trustee shall not be unreasonably withheld or delayed), execute and deliver to the Authority and such creditor(s) such Intercreditor Agreement. In addition, an Authorized Officer of the Trustee shall execute and deliver to the Authority and such creditor(s) such amendments to or supplements of such Intercreditor Agreement as may be requested by an Authorized Officer of the Authority.

(Section 1.04)

Additional Obligations

The Authority reserves the right to issue bonds, notes or any other obligations or otherwise incur indebtedness pursuant to other and separate resolutions or agreements of the Authority, so long as such bonds, notes or other obligations are not, or such other indebtedness is not, except as provided in the Resolution, entitled to a charge, lien or right prior or equal to the charge or lien created by the Resolution, or prior or equal to the rights of the Authority and Holders of Bonds as provided by the Resolution.

(Section 2.05)

Redemption of Bonds

Authorization of Redemption

Bonds of a Series subject to redemption prior to maturity pursuant to the Resolution or to a Series Resolution or a Bond Series Certificate shall be redeemable, in accordance with the Resolution, at such times, at such Redemption Prices and upon such terms as may otherwise be specified in the Resolution or in the Series Resolution authorizing such Series or the applicable Bond Series Certificate.

(Section 4.01)

Redemption at the Election or Direction of the Authority

In the case of any redemption of Bonds of a Series other than as summarized in the following paragraph, the Authority shall give written notice to the Trustee, and each applicable Provider of its election or direction to redeem, of the Series and of the principal amounts of the Bonds of each maturity of such Series and Sub-Series to be redeemed. The Series, Sub-Series, maturities and principal amounts thereof to be redeemed at the election or direction of the Authority shall be determined by the Authority in its sole discretion, subject to any limitations with respect thereto contained in the Resolution or in the Series Resolution authorizing such Series or the applicable Bond Series Certificate. Such notice shall be given to the Trustee, and each applicable Provider at least forty-five (45) days prior to the date on which such Bonds are to be redeemed, or such lesser number of days as shall be acceptable to the Trustee. Unless the notice of redemption required by the Resolution provides that the redemption is subject to the condition that money for payment of the Redemption Price is available on the redemption date, such notice shall not be given unless prior to the date such notice is to be given the Authority shall have paid or caused to be paid to the Trustee an amount which, in addition to other amounts available therefor held by the Trustee, is sufficient to redeem, on the redemption dates at the Redemption Price thereof, together with interest accrued and unpaid thereon to the redemption date, all of the Bonds of such Series to be so redeemed. For purposes of determining the amount required to be paid pursuant to the preceding sentence when Variable Interest Rate Bonds are to be redeemed, it shall be assumed that for any period for which the rate at which such Bonds will bear interest is unknown such Bonds bear interest at the Maximum Rate established therefore by the Series Resolution authorizing such Bonds or the Bond Series Certificate applicable thereto.

(Section 4.02)

Redemption Other Than at Authority's Election or Direction

Whenever by the terms of the Resolution the Trustee is required to redeem Bonds of a Series through the application of mandatory Sinking Fund Installments, the Trustee shall select the Bonds of such Series, Sub-Series and maturities to be redeemed in the manner summarized in the following paragraph, give the notice of redemption and pay out of money available therefor the Redemption Price thereof, together with interest accrued and unpaid thereon to the redemption date, to the appropriate Paying Agents in accordance with the terms of the Resolution.

(Section 4.03)

Selection of Bonds to Be Redeemed

Unless otherwise provided in the Series Resolution authorizing the issuance of Bonds of a Series or the Bond Series Certificate relating to such Bonds, in the event of redemption of less than all of the Outstanding Bonds of like Series, Sub-Series, maturity and tenor, the Trustee shall assign to each Outstanding Bond of the Series, Sub-Series, maturity and tenor to be redeemed a distinctive number for each unit of the principal amount of such Bond equal to the lowest denomination in which the Bonds of such Series are authorized to be issued and shall select by lot, using such method of selection as it shall deem proper in its discretion, from the numbers assigned to such Bonds as many numbers as, at such unit amount equal to the lowest denomination in which the Bonds of such Series are authorized to be issued for each number, shall equal the principal amount of such Bonds to be redeemed. In making such selections the Trustee may draw such Bonds by lot (i) individually or (ii) by one or more groups, the grouping for the purpose of such drawing to be by serial numbers (or, in the case of Bonds of a denomination of more than the lowest denomination in which the Bonds of such Series are authorized to be issued, by the numbers assigned thereto as summarized in the Resolution) which end in the same digit or in the same two digits. If in such a case, upon any drawing by groups, the total principal amount of Bonds drawn shall exceed the amount to be redeemed, the excess may be deducted from any group or groups so drawn in such manner as the Trustee may determine. The Trustee may in its discretion assign numbers to aliquot portions of Bonds and select part of any Bond for redemption. The Bonds to be redeemed shall be the Bonds to which were assigned numbers so selected; **provided, however**, that only so much of the principal amount of each such Bond of a denomination of more than the lowest denomination in which the Bonds of such Series are authorized to be issued shall be redeemed as shall equal the lowest denomination in which the Bonds of such Series are authorized to be issued for each number assigned to it and so selected.

Appendix D

For purposes of the Resolution, the lowest denomination in which a Capital Appreciation Bond is authorized to be issued shall be the lowest Accreted Value authorized to be due at maturity on such Bonds and the lowest denomination in which a Deferred Income Bond is authorized to be issued shall be the lowest Appreciated Value on the Interest Commencement Date authorized for such Bonds.

(Section 4.04)

Notice of Redemption

Whenever Bonds of a Series are to be redeemed, the Trustee shall give notice of the redemption of such Bonds in the name of the Authority which notice shall specify: (i) the Bonds to be redeemed which shall be identified in accordance with the Resolution, the maturity dates and interest rates of the Bonds to be redeemed and the date such Bonds were issued; (ii) the numbers and other distinguishing marks of the Bonds to be redeemed, including CUSIP numbers; (iii) the redemption date; (iv) the Redemption Price; (v) the principal amount of each Bond to be redeemed; (vi) the date of publication, if any, of the notice of redemption; (vii) that, except in the case of Book-Entry Bonds, such Bonds will be redeemed at the principal corporate trust office of the Trustee giving the address thereof and the name and telephone number of a representative of the Trustee to whom inquiries may be directed; (viii) that no representation is made as to the correctness of the CUSIP number either as printed on the Bonds or as contained in such notice and that an error in a CUSIP number as printed on such Bond or as contained in such notice shall not affect the validity of the proceedings for redemption; and (ix) if the Authority's obligation to redeem the Bonds is subject to conditions, a statement that describes the condition to such redemption. Any notice of redemption, other than a notice for special or extraordinary redemption provided for in a Series Resolution or Bond Series Certificate, may state that the redemption is conditioned upon receipt by the Trustee, on or prior to the redemption date, of moneys sufficient to pay the Redemption Price of the Bonds to be redeemed, and that if such moneys are not received such notice shall be of no force or effect and such Bonds shall not be required to be redeemed.

Such notice shall further state that on such date there shall become due and payable upon each Bond of a Series to be redeemed the Redemption Price thereof, together with interest accrued and unpaid thereon to the redemption date, and that, from and after such date, payment having been made or provided for, interest thereon shall cease to accrue. Such notice shall be given by mailing a copy of such notice not less than thirty (30) days nor more than forty-five (45) days prior to the redemption date or, in the case of Variable Interest Rate Bonds or Option Bonds, such shorter period as shall be established by the Series Resolution authorizing such Bonds or the Bond Series Certificate relating thereto, but in no event less than fifteen (15) days prior to the redemption date. Such notice shall be sent by first class mail, postage prepaid, to the registered owners of the Bonds which are to be redeemed, at their last known addresses, if any, appearing on the registration books not more than ten (10) Business Days prior to the date such notice is given. Upon giving such notice, the Trustee shall promptly certify to the Authority that it has mailed or caused to be mailed such notice to the Holders of the Bonds to be redeemed in the manner provided in the Resolution. Such certificate shall be conclusive evidence that such notice was given in the manner required by the Resolution. The failure of any Holder of a Bond of a Series to be redeemed to receive such notice shall not affect the validity of the proceedings for the redemption of the Bonds. If directed in writing by an Authorized Officer of the Authority, the Trustee shall also give such notice by publication thereof once in an Authorized Newspaper, such publication to be not less than thirty (30) days nor more than forty-five (45) days prior to the redemption date or, in the case of Variable Interest Rate Bonds or Option Bonds, such shorter period as shall be established by the Series Resolution authorizing such Bonds or the Bond Series Certificate relating thereto, but in no event less than fifteen (15) days prior to the redemption date; **provided, however**, that such publication shall not be a condition precedent to such redemption, and failure to so publish any such notice or a defect in such notice or in the publication thereof shall not affect the validity of the proceedings for the redemption of the Bonds.

(Section 4.05)

Payment of Redeemed Bonds

Notice having been given by mail in the manner provided in the Resolution, the Bonds of a Series or portions thereof so called for redemption shall become due and payable on the redemption date so designated at the Redemption Price, plus interest accrued and unpaid to the redemption date, and, upon presentation and surrender of

such Bonds, other than Book Entry Bonds of like Series, Sub-Series, maturity and tenor to be redeemed in part, at the office or offices specified in such notice, and, in the case of Bonds presented by other than the registered owner, together with a written instrument of transfer duly executed by the registered owner or his duly authorized attorney, such Bonds, or portions thereof, shall be paid at the Redemption Price plus interest accrued and unpaid to the redemption date. Payment of the Redemption Price shall be made, upon the request of the registered owner of one million dollars (\$1,000,000) or more in principal amount of Bonds to be redeemed, by wire transfer to such registered owner at the wire transfer address in the continental United States to which such registered owner has, at the time such Bonds are surrendered to the Trustee, directed in writing the Trustee to wire such Redemption Price. If there shall be drawn for redemption less than all of the principal amount of a registered Bond of a Series, the Authority shall execute and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver, upon the surrender of such Bond, without charge to the owner thereof, for the unredeemed balance of the principal amount of the registered Bond so surrendered, Bonds of like Series, Sub-Series, maturity and tenor in any of the authorized denominations. If, on the redemption date, money for the redemption of all Bonds of a Series or portions thereof of any like Series, Sub-Series, maturity and tenor to be redeemed, together with interest accrued and unpaid thereon to the redemption date, shall be held by the Trustee and Paying Agents so as to be available therefor on such date and if notice of redemption shall have been mailed as aforesaid, then, from and after the redemption date, interest on such Bonds or portions thereof so called for redemption shall cease to accrue and such Bonds shall no longer be considered to be Outstanding under the Resolution. If such money shall not be so available on the redemption date, such Bonds or portions thereof shall continue to bear interest until paid at the same rate as they would have borne had they not been called for redemption.

(Section 4.06)

Purchase of Purchased Bonds

Whenever Bonds are to be purchased at the election of the Institution, written notice thereof and of the Bonds of the Series, Sub-Series and maturity to be so purchased having been given by the Institution to the Authority, the Trustee, and each applicable Provider, the Trustee shall select the particular Bonds of such Series, Sub-Series and maturity to be so purchased in the same manner as provided by the Resolution for the selection of Bonds to be redeemed in part. Promptly thereafter the Trustee shall give notice of the purchase of the Bonds at the times and in the manner provided in the Series Resolution authorizing such Bonds or the Bond Series Certificate related thereto. The Trustee shall not give such notice unless prior to the date such notice is given, the Institution has caused to be delivered to the Trustee the written consent to such purchase of the Authority and each applicable Provider. All such purchases may be subject to conditions to the Institution's obligation to purchase such Bonds and shall be subject to the condition that money for the payment of the purchase price therefor is available on the date set for such purchase. Notice of purchase having been given in the manner required by the Series Resolution authorizing the Bonds to be so purchased or the Bond Series Certificate relating thereto, then, if sufficient money to pay the purchase price of such Bonds is held by the Trustee, the purchase price of the Bonds or portions thereof so called for purchase shall become due and payable on the date set for purchase, upon presentation and surrender of such Bonds (other than Book Entry Bonds) to be purchased at the office or offices specified in such notice, and, in the case of Bonds presented by other than the registered owner, together with a written instrument of transfer duly executed by the registered owner or his duly authorized attorney. Payment of the purchase price of other than Book Entry Bonds shall be made, upon the request of the registered owner of one million dollars (\$1,000,000) or more in principal amount of Bonds to be so purchased, by wire transfer to such registered owner at the wire transfer address in the continental United States to which such registered owner has prior to the purchase date directed in writing the Trustee to wire such purchase price. Bonds so purchased shall be considered to be Outstanding and each such Bond so purchased that is not a Book Entry Bond shall be registered in the name or at the direction of the Institution.

(Section 4.07)

Pledge of Resolution; Funds and Accounts

Pledge of Resolution

The proceeds from the sale of a Series of Bonds, the applicable Revenues, the Authority's security interest in the applicable Pledged Revenues, if any, and, except as otherwise provided in Section 5.02 of the Resolution, all

Appendix D

funds and accounts established by the Resolution, other than the Arbitrage Rebate Fund, are by the Resolution, subject to the adoption of a Series Resolution, pledged and assigned to the Trustee as security for the payment of the principal and Redemption Price of and interest on such Series of Bonds, all in accordance with the Resolution and the Series Resolution. The pledge made by the Resolution shall relate only to the Bonds of a Series authorized by such Series Resolution and no other Series of Bonds and such pledge shall not secure any such other Series of Bonds. The pledge made by the Resolution is valid, binding and perfected from the time when the pledge attaches and the proceeds from the sale of a Series of Bonds, the applicable Revenues, the Authority's security interest in the applicable Pledged Revenues, if any, and all funds and accounts established by the Resolution and by a Series Resolution which are pledged by the Resolution shall immediately be subject to the lien of such pledge without any physical delivery thereof or further act, and the lien of such pledge shall be valid, binding and perfected as against all parties having claims of any kind in tort, contract or otherwise against the Authority irrespective of whether such parties have notice thereof. No instrument by which such pledge is created nor any financing statement need be recorded or filed. The Bonds of each Series shall be special obligations of the Authority payable solely from and secured by a pledge of the proceeds from the sale of such Series of Bonds, the applicable Revenues, the Authority's security interest in the applicable Pledged Revenues, if any, and the funds and accounts established by the Resolution and pursuant to a Series Resolution and which are pledged by the Resolution as provided in the Resolution, which pledge shall constitute a first lien thereon, subject to any prior pledges and permitted Parity Indebtedness.

(Section 5.01)

Establishment of Funds and Accounts

Unless otherwise provided by a Series Resolution, the following funds are authorized to be established and shall be held and maintained for each Series of Bonds by the Trustee separate and apart from any other funds established and maintained pursuant to any other Series Resolution:

Construction Fund;
Debt Service Fund;
Debt Service Reserve Fund; and
Arbitrage Rebate Fund.

In addition to the accounts and subaccounts, if any, required to be established by the Resolution or by any Series Resolution, or any Bond Series Certificate, the Authority may for purposes of internal accounting establish such other accounts and subaccounts as the Authority or the Trustee deems proper, necessary or desirable. All money at any time deposited in any fund, account or subaccount created and pledged by the Resolution or by a Series Resolution or required by the Resolution to be created shall be held in trust for the benefit of the Holders of Bonds of a Series, but shall nevertheless be disbursed, allocated and applied solely for the uses and purposes provided in the Resolution, unless otherwise provided in the applicable Series Resolution; **provided, however**, that the proceeds derived from the remarketing of Option Bonds tendered or deemed to have been tendered for purchase in accordance with the Series Resolution authorizing the issuance of such Bonds or the Bond Series Certificate relating to such Bonds or derived from a Liquidity Facility relating to such Bonds, and any fund or account established by or pursuant to such Series Resolution for the payment of the purchase price of Option Bonds so tendered or deemed to have been tendered, shall not be held in trust for the benefit of the Holders of Bonds other than such Option Bonds and are pledged by the Resolution for the payment of the purchase price of such Option Bonds and (ii) any fund or account established by or pursuant to such Series Resolution for repayment of advances made under a Liquidity Facility for payment of the purchase price of Option Bonds, shall not be held in trust for the benefit of the Holders of Bonds other than such Option Bonds, and may be pledged to the provider of such Liquidity Facility.

(Section 5.02)

Application of Moneys in the Construction Fund

As soon as practicable after the delivery of a Series of Bonds, the Trustee shall deposit in the Construction Fund the amount required to be deposited in the Resolution pursuant to the Series Resolution authorizing such

Series or the Bond Series Certificate relating to such Series. In addition, the Authority shall pay over to the Trustee and the Trustee shall deposit in the Construction Fund any money paid to the Authority pursuant to the Resolution and all amounts paid by the Institution which by the terms of the Loan Agreement are required to be deposited in the Construction Fund.

Except as otherwise provided in the Resolution and in any applicable Series Resolution or Bond Series Certificate, money deposited in the Construction Fund shall be used only to pay the Costs of Issuance and the Costs of the Project with respect to such Series of Bonds.

Upon receipt by the Trustee of a certificate relating to the completion of a Project, the money, if any, then remaining in the Construction Fund relating to such Project, after making provision in accordance with the direction of an Authorized Officer of the Authority for the payment of any Costs of Issuance and Costs of such Project then unpaid, shall be paid or applied by the Trustee as follows and in the following order of priority:

First: Upon the direction of an Authorized Officer of the Authority, to the Arbitrage Rebate Fund, the amount set forth in such direction;

Second: To the Debt Service Reserve Fund, if any, such amount as shall be necessary to make the amount on deposit in such fund equal to the Debt Service Reserve Fund Requirement; and

Third: To the Debt Service Fund, to be applied in accordance with the Resolution, any balance remaining.

(Section 5.04)

Deposit of Revenues and Allocation Thereof

The Revenues and any other moneys, which, by any of the provisions of the Loan Agreement, are required to be paid to the Trustee, shall upon receipt thereof be deposited or paid by the Trustees follows and in the following order of priority:

First: To the Debt Service Fund (i) in the case of Revenues received during the period from the beginning of each Bond Year until December 31 thereof, the amount, if any, necessary to make the amount in the Debt Service Fund equal to (a) the interest on Outstanding Bonds of a Series payable on or prior to the next succeeding January 1, including the interest estimated by the Authority to be payable on any Variable Interest Rate Bond of a Series on and prior to the next succeeding January 1, assuming that such Variable Interest Rate Bond will bear interest, from and after the next date on which the rate at which such Variable Interest Rate Bond bears interest is to be adjusted, at a rate per annum equal to the rate per annum at which such Bonds then bear interest, plus one percent (1%) per annum, (b) the Sinking Fund Installments of Outstanding Option Bonds of a Series and Variable Interest Rate Bonds of a Series payable on or prior to the next succeeding January 1 and (c) the purchase price or Redemption Price of Outstanding Bonds of a Series theretofore contracted to be purchased or called for redemption pursuant to the Resolution, on or prior to the next succeeding January 1, plus accrued interest thereon to the date of purchase or redemption; and (ii) in the case of Revenues received thereafter and until the end of such Bond Year, the amount, if any, necessary to make the amount in the Debt Service Fund equal to (a) the interest on and the principal and Sinking Fund Installments of Outstanding Bonds payable on and prior to the next succeeding July 1, including the interest estimated by the Authority to be payable on any Variable Interest Rate Bond on and prior to the next succeeding July 1, assuming that such Variable Interest Rate Bond will bear interest, from and after the next date on which the rate at which such Variable Interest Rate Bond bears interest is to be adjusted, at a rate per annum equal to the rate per annum at which such Bonds then bear interest, plus one percent (1%) per annum and (b) the purchase price or Redemption Price of Outstanding Bonds theretofore contracted to be

Appendix D

purchased or called for redemption pursuant to the Resolution on or prior to the next succeeding July 1, plus accrued interest thereon to the date of purchase or redemption;

Second: To reimburse, pro rata, each Provider for Provider Payments which are then unpaid, in proportion to the respective Provider Payments then unpaid to each Provider;

Third: To the Debt Service Reserve Fund, if any, the amount, if any, necessary to make the amount on deposit in the Resolution equal to the Debt Service Reserve Fund Requirement;

Fourth: Upon the direction of an Authorized Officer of the Authority, to the Arbitrage Rebate Fund the amount set forth in such direction; and

Fifth: To the Authority, unless otherwise paid, such amounts as are payable to the Authority relating to such Series for: (i) any expenditures of the Authority for fees and expenses of auditing, and fees and expenses of the Trustee and Paying Agents, all as required by the Resolution, (ii) all other expenditures reasonably and necessarily incurred by the Authority in connection with the financing of the Project, including expenses incurred by the Authority to compel full and punctual performance of all the provisions of the applicable Loan Agreement or any Mortgage in accordance with the terms thereof, and (iii) any fees of the Authority; but only upon receipt by the Trustee of a certificate signed by an Authorized Officer of the Authority, stating in reasonable detail the amounts payable to the Authority pursuant to the provisions summarized in this paragraph.

The Trustee shall, promptly after making the above required payments, notify the Authority and the Institution of any balance of Revenues remaining on the immediately succeeding July 1. After making the above required payments, the balance, if any, of the Revenues then remaining shall, upon the direction of an Authorized Officer of the Authority, be paid by the Trustee to the Construction Fund or the Debt Service Fund, or paid to the Institution, in the respective amounts set forth in such direction. Any amounts paid to the Institution shall be free and clear of any pledge, lien, encumbrance or security interest created by the Resolution or by the applicable Loan Agreement.

(Section 5.05)

Debt Service Fund

(a) The Trustee shall on or before the Business Day preceding each interest payment date pay to itself and any other Paying Agent out of the Debt Service Fund:

(i) the interest due and payable on all Outstanding Bonds of a Series on such interest payment date;

(ii) the principal amount due and payable on all Outstanding Bonds of a Series on such interest payment date; and

(iii) the Sinking Fund Installments or other amounts related to a mandatory redemption, if any, due and payable on all Outstanding Bonds on such interest payment date on Outstanding Bonds of a Series.

The amounts paid out pursuant to the Resolution shall be irrevocably pledged to and applied to such payments.

(b) In the event that on the fourth Business Day preceding any interest payment date the amount in the Debt Service Fund shall be less than the amounts, respectively, required for payment of interest on the Outstanding Bonds, for the payment of principal of such Outstanding Bonds of a Series, for the payment of Sinking Fund Installments of such Outstanding Bonds due and payable on such interest payment date or for the payment of the purchase price or Redemption Price of such Outstanding Bonds theretofore contracted to be purchased or called for

redemption, plus accrued interest thereon to the date of purchase or redemption, the Trustee shall withdraw from the applicable Debt Service Reserve Fund and deposit to the Debt Service Fund, if any, and deposit to the Debt Service Fund such amounts as will increase the amount in the Debt Service Fund to an amount sufficient to make such payments. The Trustee shall notify the Authority, each Facility Provider and the Institution of a withdrawal from the Debt Service Reserve Fund.

(c) Notwithstanding the provisions of paragraph (a) of the Resolution, the Authority may, at any time subsequent to the first day of July of any Bond Year but in no event less than forty-five (45) days prior to the succeeding date on which a Sinking Fund Installment is scheduled to be due, direct the Trustee to purchase, with money on deposit in the Debt Service Fund, (other than a Debt Service Fund established in connection with a Series of Bonds secured by a Credit Facility that is a direct-pay letter of credit), at a price not in excess of par plus interest accrued and unpaid to the date of such purchase, Term Bonds of a Series to be redeemed from such Sinking Fund Installment. In addition, the Institution pursuant to the Loan Agreement may deliver, at any time subsequent to July 1 of any Bond Year, but in no event less than forty-five (45) days prior to the succeeding date on which a Sinking Fund Installment is scheduled to be due, to the Trustee for cancellation one or more Term Bonds of the Series and maturity to be so redeemed on such date from such Sinking Fund Installment. Any Term Bond so purchased and any Term Bond so delivered to the Trustee shall be canceled upon receipt thereof by the Trustee and evidence of such cancellation shall be given to the Authority. The principal amount of each Term Bond so canceled shall be credited against the Sinking Fund Installment due on such date; **provided, however**, that such Term Bond is canceled by the Trustee prior to the date on which notice of redemption is given.

(d) Any Term Bond so delivered to the Trustee shall be canceled upon receipt thereof by the Trustee and evidence of such cancellation shall be given to the Authority. The principal amount of each Term Bond so canceled shall be credited against the Sinking Fund Installment due on such date, **provided, however**, that such Term Bond is canceled by the Trustee prior to the date on which notice of redemption is given.

(e) Money in the Debt Service Fund in excess of the amount required to pay the principal and Sinking Fund Installments of Outstanding Bonds of a Series payable on and prior to the next succeeding July 1, the interest on Outstanding Bonds of a Series payable on and prior to the earlier of the next succeeding January 1 or July 1, assuming that a Variable Interest Rate Bond will bear interest, from and after the next date on which the rate at which such Variable Interest Rate Bond bears interest is to be adjusted, at a rate per annum equal to the rate per annum at which such Bonds then bear interest, plus one percent (1%) per annum, and the purchase price or Redemption Price of Outstanding Bonds of a Series theretofore contracted to be purchased or called for redemption, plus accrued interest thereon to the date of purchase or redemption, shall be applied by the Trustee in accordance with the direction of an Authorized Officer of the Authority to the purchase of Outstanding Bonds of a Series at purchase prices not exceeding the Redemption Price applicable on the next interest payment date on which such Bonds are redeemable, plus accrued and unpaid interest to such date, at such times, at such purchase prices and in such manner as an Authorized Officer of the Authority shall direct. If sixty (60) days prior to the end of a Bond Year an excess, calculated as aforesaid, exists in the Debt Service Fund, such money shall be applied by the Trustee in accordance with the direction of an Authorized Officer of the Authority given pursuant the Resolution to the redemption of Bonds of a Series as provided in the Resolution, at the Redemption Prices specified in the applicable Series Resolution authorizing the issuance of the Bonds to be redeemed or the Bond Series Certificate relating to such Bonds.

(Section 5.06)

Debt Service Reserve Fund

(a) (1) The Trustee shall deposit to the credit of the Debt Service Reserve Fund such proceeds of the sale of Bonds of a Series, if any, as shall be prescribed in the applicable Series Resolution or the applicable Bond Series Certificate, and any Revenues, moneys, Government Obligations and Exempt Obligations as, by the provisions of the Loan Agreement are delivered to the Trustee by the Institution for the purposes of the Debt Service Reserve Fund.

Appendix D

(2) In lieu of or in substitution for moneys, Government Obligations or Exempt Obligations, the Authority may deposit or cause to be deposited with the Trustee a Reserve Fund Facility for the benefit of the Holders of the Bonds of a Series for all or any part of the Debt Service Reserve Fund Requirement.

(b) Moneys held for the credit of the Debt Service Reserve Fund shall be withdrawn by the Trustee and deposited to the credit of the Debt Service Fund at the times and in the amounts required to comply with the provisions of the Resolution; provided that no payment under a Reserve Fund Facility shall be sought unless and until moneys are not available in the applicable Debt Service Reserve Fund and the amount required to be withdrawn from the Debt Service Reserve Fund cannot be withdrawn therefrom without obtaining payment under such Reserve Fund Facility; provided further, that, if more than one Reserve Fund Facility is held for the credit of the Debt Service Reserve Fund at the time moneys are to be withdrawn therefrom, the Trustee shall obtain payment under each such Reserve Fund Facility, pro rata, based upon the respective amounts then available to be paid under the Resolution. The Trustee shall provide notification as set forth in the Resolution of any withdrawal of moneys from the Debt Service Reserve Fund or payment of a Reserve Fund Facility immediately upon such withdrawal or payment.

With respect to any demand for payment under any Reserve Fund Facility deposited in the Debt Service Reserve Fund, the Trustee shall make such demand for payment in accordance with the terms of such Reserve Fund Facility at the earliest time provided in the Resolution to assure the availability of moneys on the interest payment date for which such moneys are required.

(c) (1) Moneys and investments held for the credit of the Debt Service Reserve Fund in excess of the Debt Service Reserve Fund Requirement, upon direction of an Authorized Officer of the Authority, shall be withdrawn by the Trustee and (i) deposited in the Arbitrage Rebate Fund, Debt Service Fund or Construction Fund, (ii) paid to the Institution or (iii) applied by the Authority to pay the principal or Redemption Price of and interest on bonds of the Authority issued in connection with the Institution pursuant to resolutions other than the Resolution, in accordance with such direction; **provided, however**, that no such amount shall be withdrawn and deposited, paid or applied unless in the opinion of Bond Counsel such deposit, payment or application will not adversely affect the exclusion of interest on any Bonds from gross income for federal income tax purposes.

(2) Notwithstanding the provisions of the Resolution, if, upon a Bond of a Series having been deemed to have been paid in accordance with the defeasance provisions of the Resolution or redeemed prior to maturity from the proceeds of Bonds, bonds, notes or other obligations issued for such purpose, the moneys and investments held for the credit of the Debt Service Reserve Fund will exceed the Debt Service Reserve Fund Requirement, then the Trustee shall, simultaneously with such redemption or a deposit made in accordance with the defeasance provisions of the Resolution, withdraw all or any portion of such excess from the Debt Service Reserve Fund upon the direction of an Authorized Officer of the Authority and either (i) apply such amount to the payment of the principal or Redemption Price of and interest on such Bond in accordance with the irrevocable instructions of the Authority, or (ii) either (x) fund any reserve for the payment of the principal and sinking fund installments of or interest on the bonds, notes or other obligations, if any, issued to provide for payment of such Bond if, in the opinion of Bond Counsel, application of such moneys to the use authorized in provisions summarized in this clause (x) will not adversely affect the exclusion of interest on any Bonds from gross income for federal income tax purposes, (y) pay such amount to the Authority for deposit to the Construction Fund if, in the opinion of Bond Counsel, application of such moneys to the payment of Costs of the Project will not adversely affect the exclusion of interest on any Bonds from gross income for federal income tax purposes, or (z) apply such amount to such other purpose as may be approved in writing by the Authority if, in the opinion of Bond Counsel, application of such amount to such purpose will not adversely affect the exclusion of interest on any Bonds from gross income for federal income tax purposes; provided that after such withdrawal the amount remaining in the Debt Service Reserve Fund shall not be less than the Debt Service Reserve Fund Requirement.

(d) Subject to the limitation described in the definition of Debt Service Reserve Fund Requirement, if upon a valuation, the moneys, investments and Reserve Fund Facilities held for the credit of the Debt Service Reserve Fund are less than the applicable Debt Service Reserve Fund Requirement, the Trustee shall immediately notify the Authority and the Institution of such deficiency and the Institution shall, as soon as practicable, but in no event later than fifteen (15) days after receipt of such notice, deliver to the Trustee moneys, Government Obligations, Exempt Obligations or Reserve Fund Facilities the value of which is sufficient to increase the amount

in the Debt Service Reserve Fund to the Debt Service Reserve Fund Requirement. If the Institution has not made timely payment, the Trustee shall immediately notify the Authority of such non-payment.

(Section 5.07)

Arbitrage Rebate Fund

The Trustee shall deposit to the Arbitrage Rebate Fund any money delivered to it by the Institution for deposit in the Resolution and, notwithstanding any other provisions of the Resolution, shall transfer to the Arbitrage Rebate Fund, in accordance with the directions of an Authorized Officer of the Authority, money on deposit in any other funds held by the Trustee under the Resolution at such times and in such amounts as shall be set forth in such directions.

Money on deposit in the Arbitrage Rebate Fund shall be applied by the Trustee in accordance with the direction of an Authorized Officer of the Authority to make payments to the Department of the Treasury of the United States of America at such times and in such amounts as the Authority shall determine to be required by the Code to be rebated to the Department of the Treasury of the United States of America. Money which an Authorized Officer of the Authority determines to be in excess of the amount required to be so rebated shall, first, be applied to reimburse, pro rata, each Provider for money advanced under a Credit Facility or Liquidity Facility, including interest thereon, which is then unpaid, in proportion to the respective amounts advanced by each such Provider, and, then be deposited to any fund or account established under the Resolution in accordance with the written direction of such Authorized Officer.

The Authority shall periodically determine the amount which may be required by the Code to be rebated to the Department of the Treasury of the United States of America with respect to a Series of Bonds and direct the Trustee to (i) transfer from any other of the funds and accounts held by the Trustee under the Resolution and deposit to the Arbitrage Rebate Fund such amount as the Authority shall have determined to be necessary in order to enable it to comply with its obligation to rebate money to the Department of the Treasury of the United States of America with respect to such Series of Bonds and (ii) if and to the extent required by the Code, pay out of the Arbitrage Rebate Fund to the Department of the Treasury of the United States of America the amount, if any, required by the Code to be rebated thereto.

(Section 5.08)

Application of Money in Certain Funds for Retirement of Bonds

Notwithstanding any other provisions of the Resolution, if at any time the amounts held in the Debt Service Fund and the applicable Debt Service Reserve Fund, if any, are sufficient to pay the principal or Redemption Price of all Outstanding Bonds of a Series and the interest accrued and unpaid and to accrue on such Bonds to the next date of redemption when all such Bonds are redeemable or to make provision pursuant to the Resolution for the payment of the Outstanding Bonds at the maturity or redemption dates thereof, the Trustee shall so notify the Authority and the Institution. Upon receipt of such notice, the Authority may (i) direct the Trustee to redeem all such Outstanding Bonds of a Series, whereupon the Trustee shall proceed to redeem or provide for the redemption of such Outstanding Bonds in the manner provided for redemption of such Bonds by the Resolution and by a Series Resolution as provided in the redemption provisions of the Resolution, or (ii) give the Trustee irrevocable instructions in accordance with the defeasance provisions of the Resolution and make provision for the payment of such Outstanding Bonds at the maturity or redemption dates thereof in accordance therewith.

(Section 5.09)

Transfer of Investments

Whenever money in any fund or account established under the Resolution or under a Series Resolution is to be paid in accordance with the Resolution to another such fund or account, such payment may be made, in whole or in part, by transferring to such other fund or account investments held as part of the fund or account from which

Appendix D

such payment is to be made, whose value, together with the money, if any, to be transferred, is at least equal to the amount of the payment then to be made; **provided, however**, that no such transfer of investments would result in a violation of any investment standard or guideline applicable to such fund.

(Section 5.10)

Security for Deposits and Investment of Funds

Security for Deposits

All moneys held under the Resolution by the Trustee shall be continuously and fully secured, for the benefit of the Authority and the Holders of a Series of Bonds, by direct obligations of the United States of America or obligations the principal of and interest on which are guaranteed by the United States of America of a market value equal at all times to the amount of the deposit so held by the Trustee; **provided, however**, (a) that if the securing of such money is not permitted by applicable law, then in such other manner as may then be required or permitted by applicable State or federal laws and regulations regarding the security for, or granting a preference in the case of, the deposit of trust funds, and (b) that it shall not be necessary for the Trustee or any Paying Agent to give security for the deposit of any money with them pursuant to the debt service fund provisions or the defeasance provisions of the Resolution and held in trust for the payment of the principal, Sinking Fund Installments, if any, or Redemption Price of or interest on a Series of Bonds, or for the Trustee to give security for any money which shall be represented by obligations purchased or other investments made under the provisions of the Resolution as an investment of such money.

(Section 6.01)

Investment of Funds and Accounts Held by the Trustee

(a) Money held under the Resolution by the Trustee, if permitted by law, shall, as nearly as may be practicable, be invested by the Trustee, upon direction of the Authority given or confirmed in writing, signed by an Authorized Officer of the Authority (which direction shall specify the amount thereof to be so invested), in Government Obligations, Federal Agency Obligations or Exempt Obligations; **provided, however**, that each such investment shall permit the money so deposited or invested to be available for use at the times at which the Authority reasonably believes such money will be required for the purposes of the Resolution.

(b) In lieu of the investments of money in obligations authorized in paragraph (a) of the Resolution summarized above the Trustee shall, to the extent permitted by law, upon direction of the Authority given or confirmed in writing, signed by an Authorized Officer of the Authority, invest money in the Construction Fund or Debt Service Reserve Fund in any Permitted Investment; provided, however, that each such investment shall permit the money so deposited or invested to be available for use at the times at which the Authority reasonably believes such money will be required for the purposes of the Resolution, provided, further, that (x) any Permitted Collateral required to secure any Permitted Investment shall have a market value, determined by the Trustee or its agent periodically, but no less frequently than weekly, at least equal to the amount deposited or invested including interest accrued thereon, (y) the Permitted Collateral shall be deposited with and held by the Trustee or an agent of the Trustee approved by an Authorized Officer of the Authority, and (z) the Permitted Collateral shall be free and clear of claims of any other person.

(c) Permitted Investments purchased as an investment of money in any fund or account held by the Trustee under the provisions of the Resolution shall be deemed at all times to be a part of such fund or account and the income or interest earned, profits realized or losses suffered by a fund or account due to the investment thereof shall be retained in, credited or charged, as the case may be, to such fund or account.

(d) In computing the amount in any fund or account held by the Trustee under the provisions of the Resolution, each Permitted Investment shall be valued at par or the market value thereof, plus accrued interest, whichever is lower.

(e) Notwithstanding anything to the contrary in the Resolution, the Authority, in its discretion, may direct the Trustee to, and the Trustee shall, sell, present for redemption or exchange any investment held by the Trustee pursuant to the Resolution and the proceeds thereof may be reinvested as provided in the Resolution. Except as otherwise provided in the Resolution, the Trustee shall sell at the best price obtainable, or present for redemption or exchange, any investment held by it pursuant to the Resolution whenever it shall be necessary in order to provide money to meet any payment or transfer from the fund or account in which such investment is held. The Trustee shall advise the Authority and the Institution in writing, on or before the fifteenth (15th) day of each calendar month, of the amounts required to be on deposit in each fund and account under the Resolution and of the details of all investments held for the credit of each fund and account in its custody under the provisions of the Resolution as of the end of the preceding month and as to whether such investments comply with the provisions of paragraphs (a), (b) and (c) of this Section of the Resolution. The details of such investments shall include the par value, if any, the cost and the current market value of such investments as of the end of the preceding month. The Trustee shall also describe all withdrawals, substitutions and other transactions occurring in each such fund and account in the previous month.

(f) No part of the proceeds of a Series of Bonds or any other funds of the Authority shall be used directly or indirectly to acquire any securities or investments the acquisition of which would cause any Bond of a Series to be an “arbitrage bond” within the meaning of Section 148(a) of the Code.

(Section 6.02)

Particular Covenants

Payment of Principal and Interest

The Authority shall pay or cause to be paid the principal, Sinking Fund Installments, if any, or Redemption Price of and interest on every Bond of each Series on the date and at the places and in the manner provided in such Bonds according to the true intent and meaning thereof.

(Section 7.01)

Further Assurance

The Authority, at any and all times, shall, so far as it may be authorized by law, pass, make, do, execute, acknowledge and deliver all and every such further resolutions, acts, deeds, conveyances, assignments, transfers and assurances as may be necessary or desirable for the better assuring, conveying, granting, assigning and confirming all and singular the rights, pledges and assignments created by the Resolution and by the applicable Series Resolution or made or intended to be created or made, or which the Authority may hereafter become bound to pledge or assign.

(Section 7.04)

Accounts and Audits

The Authority shall keep proper books of records and accounts (separate from all other records and accounts), which may be kept on behalf of the Authority by the Trustee, in which complete and correct entries shall be made of its transactions relating to a Series of Bonds, including but not limited to the objects and purposes for which proceeds of such Bonds were expended and the respective amounts expended for such objects and purposes. Such books and accounts, at reasonable hours and subject to the reasonable rules and regulations of the Authority, shall be subject to the inspection of the Institution, the Trustee or of any Holder of a Bond of a Series or his representative duly authorized in writing. The Trustee shall annually prepare a report which shall be furnished to the

Appendix D

Authority, to each Provider and to the Institution. Such report shall include at least: a statement of all funds (including investments thereof) held by such Trustee and the Authority pursuant to the provisions of the Resolution and the applicable Series Resolution; a statement of the Revenues collected in connection herewith and with each Series Resolution; and complete and correct entries of the Authority's transactions relating to each Series of Bonds. A copy of such report shall, upon receipt of a written request therefor, and payment of any reasonable fee or charge made in connection therewith, be furnished to the registered owner of a Bond of a Series or any beneficial owner of a Book Entry Bond requesting the same.

(Section 7.05)

Creation of Liens

Except as permitted by the Resolution or by or pursuant to a Series Resolution, the Authority shall not create, cause to be created or suffer or permit the creation of any lien or charge prior or equal to that of the Bonds of a Series on the proceeds from the sale of such Bonds, the applicable Revenues, the Authority's security interest in the applicable Pledged Revenues, if any, the rights of the Authority to receive payments to be made under a Loan Agreement that are to be deposited with the Trustee or the funds and accounts established by the Resolution and by any Series Resolution which are pledged by the Resolution; **provided, however**, that nothing contained in the Resolution shall prevent the Authority from (i) issuing bonds, notes or other obligations or otherwise incurring indebtedness under another and separate resolution so long as the charge or lien created by such resolution is not prior to the charge or lien created by the Resolution and by a Series Resolution and (ii) incurring obligations with respect to a Credit Facility or a Liquidity Facility which are secured by a lien upon and pledge of the applicable Revenues of equal priority with the lien created and the pledge made by the Resolution and by the applicable Series Resolution.

(Section 7.06)

Enforcement of Duties and Obligations of the Institution

The Authority shall take all legally available action to cause the Institution to perform fully all duties and acts and comply fully with the covenants of the Institution required by a Loan Agreement in the manner and at the times provided in such Loan Agreement; **provided, however**, that the Authority may (i) delay, defer or waive enforcement of one or more provisions of such Loan Agreement (other than provisions requiring the payment of money or the delivery of securities to the Trustee for deposit to any fund or account established under the Resolution) if the Authority determines such delay, deferment or waiver will not materially adversely affect the interests of the Holders of the Bonds of such Series and (ii) at any time prior to the occurrence of an event of default under the Resolution, annul any declaration that the indebtedness under such Loan Agreement is immediately due and payable and, if prior to the entry of a final judgment or decree in any action or proceeding instituted on account of an event of default under such Loan Agreement, discontinue such action or proceeding if the Institution shall have cured each event of default under such Loan Agreement.

(Section 7.07)

Deposit of Certain Moneys in the Construction Fund

In addition to the proceeds of Bonds of a Series to be deposited in the Construction Fund, any money paid to the Authority for the acquisition, construction, reconstruction, renovation or equipment of a Project, including the proceeds of any insurance of condemnation award so applied, shall be deposited in the Construction Fund.

(Section 7.08)

Offices for Payment and Registration of Bonds

The Authority shall at all times maintain an office or agency in the State where Bonds of a Series may be presented for payment. The Authority may, pursuant to a Supplemental Resolution or a Series Resolution or

pursuant to a resolution adopted in accordance with the Resolution, designate an additional Paying Agent or Paying Agents where Bonds of the Series authorized by the Resolution or referred to in the Resolution may be presented for payment. The Authority shall at all times maintain an office or agency in the State where Bonds of a Series may be presented for registration, transfer or exchange and the Trustee is appointed as its agent to maintain such office or agency for the registration, transfer or exchange of such Bonds.

(Section 7.09)

Amendment of Loan Agreement

A Loan Agreement may not be amended, changed, modified, altered or terminated nor may any provision thereof be waived if any such amendment, change, modification, alteration, termination or waiver would adversely affect the interest of the Holders of Outstanding Bonds of the applicable Series in any material respect unless consented to in writing by the Holders of at least a majority in aggregate principal amount of the Bonds of such Series then Outstanding; **provided, however**, that no such amendment, change, modification, alteration, or termination will reduce the percentage of the aggregate principal amount of Outstanding Bonds of a Series the consent of the Holders of which is a requirement for any such amendment, change, modification, alteration or termination, or decrease the amount of any payment required to be made by the Institution under such Loan Agreement that is to be deposited with the Trustee or extend the time of payment thereof. Any consent given pursuant to this paragraph by the Holders of Bonds shall, except as otherwise provided in the Resolution, be given in the same manner required by the Resolution.

A Loan Agreement may be amended, changed, modified or altered (i) to make changes necessary or appropriate in connection with the acquisition, construction, reconstruction, rehabilitation and improvement, or otherwise providing, furnishing and equipping of any facilities constituting a part of any Project or to otherwise amend the Project or (ii) with the consent of the Trustee, to cure any ambiguity, or to correct or supplement any provisions contained in such Loan Agreement which may be defective or inconsistent with any other provisions contained in the Resolution or in the Loan Agreement. Except as otherwise provided in the Resolution, a Loan Agreement may be amended, changed, modified or altered without the consent of the Holders of Outstanding Bonds or the Trustee. Prior to execution by the Authority of any amendment, a copy thereof certified by an Authorized Officer of the Authority shall be filed with the Trustee.

For the purposes of the Resolution, the purchasers of Bonds of a Series, whether purchasing as underwriters, Remarketing Agent or otherwise for resale, may upon such purchase consent to an amendment, change, modification, alteration, termination or waiver permitted by this Resolution in the manner provided in the Resolution, except that no proof of ownership shall be required, and with the same effect as a consent given by the Holder of such Bonds; **provided, however**, that, if such consent is given by a purchaser who is purchasing as an underwriter or Remarketing Agent or for resale, the nature of the amendment, change, modification, alteration, termination or waiver and the provisions for the purchaser consenting thereto shall be described in the official statement, prospectus, offering memorandum or other offering document prepared in connection with the initial offering, reoffering or resale of the Bonds of such Series.

For the purposes of the Resolution, a Series shall be deemed to be adversely affected by an amendment, change, modification, alteration or termination of the Loan Agreement or the waiver of any provision thereof if the same adversely affects or diminishes the rights of the Holders of the Bonds of such Series in any material respect. The Trustee may in its discretion determine whether or not, in accordance with the foregoing provisions, Bonds of any particular Series would be adversely affected in any material respect by any amendment, change, modification, alteration, termination or waiver and any such determination shall be binding and conclusive on the Institution, the Authority and all Holders of Bonds of such Series.

Appendix D

For all purposes of the Resolution section summarized herein, the Trustee shall be entitled to rely upon an opinion of counsel, which counsel shall be satisfactory to the Trustee, with respect to whether any amendment, change, modification, alteration, termination or waiver adversely affects the interests of any Holders of Bonds of a Series then Outstanding in any material respect.

(Section 7.11)

Notice as to Event of Default under Loan Agreement

The Authority shall notify the Trustee in writing that an Event of Default under the Loan Agreement, as such term is defined in such Loan Agreement, has occurred and is continuing, which notice shall be given as soon as practicable after the Authority has obtained actual knowledge thereof.

(Section 7.12)

Series Resolutions and Supplemental Resolutions

Modification and Amendment without Consent

Notwithstanding any other provisions of the Resolution, the Authority may adopt at any time or from time to time Series Resolutions or Supplemental Resolutions for any one or more of the following purposes, and any such Series Resolution or Supplemental Resolution shall become effective in accordance with its terms upon the filing with the Trustee of a copy thereof certified by an Authorized Officer of the Authority:

- (a) To provide for the issuance of a Series of Bonds pursuant to the provisions of the Resolution and to prescribe the terms and conditions pursuant to which such Bonds may be issued, paid or redeemed;
- (b) To add additional covenants and agreements of the Authority for the purpose of further securing the payment of the Bonds of a Series, provided such additional covenants and agreements are not contrary to or inconsistent with the covenants and agreements of the Authority contained in the Resolution;
- (c) To prescribe further limitations and restrictions upon the issuance of Bonds of a Series and the incurring of indebtedness by the Authority which are not contrary to or inconsistent with the limitations and restrictions thereon theretofore in effect;
- (d) To surrender any right, power or privilege reserved to or conferred upon the Authority by the terms of the Resolution, provided that the surrender of such right, power or privilege is not contrary to or inconsistent with the covenants and agreements of the Authority contained in the Resolution;
- (e) To confirm, as further assurance, any pledge under the Resolution and under a Series Resolution, and the subjection to any lien, claim or pledge created or to be created by the provisions of the Resolution and a Series Resolution, of the Revenues, or any pledge of any other money, securities or funds;
- (f) To modify any of the provisions of the Resolution or of any previously adopted Series Resolution or Supplemental Resolution in any other respects, provided that such modifications shall not be effective until after all Bonds of any Series of Bonds Outstanding as of the date of adoption of such Supplemental Resolution or Series Resolution shall cease to be Outstanding, and all Bonds issued under such resolutions shall contain a specific reference to the modifications contained in such subsequent Resolutions;
- (g) To modify or amend a Project; or
- (h) With the consent of the Trustee, to cure any ambiguity or defect or inconsistent provision in the Resolution or to insert such provisions clarifying matters or questions arising under the Resolution as

are necessary or desirable, provided that any such modifications are not contrary to or inconsistent with the Resolution as theretofore in effect, or to modify any of the provisions of the Resolution or of any previously adopted Series Resolution or Supplemental Resolution in any other respect, provided that such modification shall not adversely affect the interests of the Bondholders of a Series in any material respect.

(Section 9.01)

Supplemental Resolutions Effective With Consent

The provisions of the Resolution and of a Series Resolution may also be modified or amended at any time or from time to time by a Supplemental Resolution, subject to the consent of the Bondholders of the applicable Series in accordance with and subject to the provisions of the Resolution, such Supplemental Resolution to become effective upon the filing with the Trustee of a copy thereof certified by an Authorized Officer of the Authority. The Trustee shall transmit a copy of such Supplemental Resolution to the Institution upon its becoming effective.

(Section 9.02)

General Provisions Relating to Supplemental Resolutions

The Resolution or a Series Resolution shall not be modified or amended in any respect except in accordance with and subject to the provisions of the Resolution. Nothing contained the Resolution shall affect or limit the rights or obligations of the Authority to adopt, make, do, execute or deliver any resolution, act or other instrument pursuant to the provisions of the Resolution summarized under the heading “**Further Assurance**” above, or the right or obligation of the Authority to execute and deliver to the Trustee or any Paying Agent any instrument elsewhere provided in the Resolution or permitted to be delivered to the Trustee or any Paying Agent.

A copy of every Series Resolution and Supplemental Resolution adopted by the Authority, when filed with the Trustee, shall be accompanied by an opinion of Bond Counsel stating that such Series Resolution or Supplemental Resolution has been duly and lawfully adopted in accordance with the provisions of the Resolution, is authorized or permitted by the Resolution and is valid and binding upon the Authority and enforceable in accordance with its terms. The Trustee shall transmit a copy of such Supplemental Resolution to the Institution and to each applicable Provider upon its becoming effective.

The Trustee is authorized to accept delivery of a certified copy of any Series Resolution or Supplemental Resolution permitted or authorized pursuant to the provisions of the Resolution and to make all further agreements and stipulations which may be contained in the Resolution, and, in taking such action, the Trustee shall be fully protected in relying on the opinion of Bond Counsel that such Series Resolution or Supplemental Resolution is authorized or permitted by the provisions of the Resolution.

No Series Resolution or Supplemental Resolution changing, amending or modifying any of the rights or obligations of the Trustee, a Paying Agent or a Provider shall become effective without the written consent of the Trustee, the Paying Agent or Provider affected by the Resolution.

(Section 9.03)

Amendments of Resolution

Powers of Amendment

Any modification or amendment of the Resolution and of the rights and obligations of the Authority and of the Holders of the Bonds under the Resolution or of any Series Resolution, in any particular, may be made by a Supplemental Resolution, with the written consent given as in the Resolution after provided in the Resolution, (i) of the Holders of at least a majority in principal amount of the Bonds of a Series Outstanding at the time such consent is given, or (ii) in case the modification or amendment changes the amount or date of any Sinking Fund Installment, of the Holders of at least a majority in principal amount of the Bonds of the particular Series, maturity and interest

Appendix D

rate entitled to such Sinking Fund Installment, Outstanding at the time such consent is given. No such modification or amendment shall permit a change in the terms of redemption or maturity of the principal of any Outstanding Bond of a Series or of any installment of interest thereon or a reduction in the principal amount or the Redemption Price thereof or in the rate of interest thereon without the consent of the Holder of such Bond, or shall reduce the percentages or otherwise affect the classes of Bonds the consent of the Holders of which is required to effect any such modification or amendment. For the purposes of the Resolution section summarized herein, a Series shall be deemed to be affected by a modification or amendment of the Resolution if the same adversely affects or diminishes the rights of the Holders of Bonds of such Series in any material respect. The Trustee may in its discretion determine whether or not, in accordance with the foregoing provisions, the Bonds of a particular Series or maturity would be affected by any modification or amendment of the Resolution and any such determination shall be binding and conclusive on the Authority and all Holders of Bonds of such Series. The Trustee may receive an opinion of counsel, including an opinion of Bond Counsel, as conclusive evidence as to whether the Bonds of any particular Series or maturity would be so affected by any such modification or amendment of the Resolution. The Trustee shall transmit a copy of such Supplemental Resolution to the Institution upon its becoming effective.

(Section 10.01)

Consent of Bondholders

The Authority may at any time adopt a Supplemental Resolution making a modification or amendment permitted by the provisions of the Resolution summarized above to take effect when and as provided in the Resolution. A copy of such Supplemental Resolution (or brief summary thereof or reference thereto in form approved by the Trustee) together with a request to the Bondholders of a Series of Bonds affected by the Resolution for their consent thereto in form satisfactory to the Trustee, shall promptly after adoption be mailed by the Authority to such Bondholders (but failure to mail such copy and request to any particular Bondholder shall not affect the validity of the Supplemental Resolution when consented to as provided in the Resolution). Such Supplemental Resolution shall not be effective unless and until (i) there shall have been filed with the Trustee (a) the written consent of the Holders of the percentages of Outstanding Bonds of a Series specified in the Resolution and (b) an opinion of Bond Counsel stating that such Supplemental Resolution has been duly and lawfully adopted and filed by the Authority in accordance with the provisions of the Resolution, is authorized or permitted by the Resolution, and is valid and binding upon the Authority and enforceable in accordance with its terms, and (ii) a notice shall have been mailed as provided in the Resolution. Each such consent shall be effective only if accompanied by proof of the holding or owning at the date of such consent, of the Bonds of a Series with respect to which such consent is given, which proof shall be such as is permitted by the Resolution. A certificate or certificates by the Trustee filed with the Trustee that it has examined such proof and that such proof is sufficient in accordance with the Resolution shall be conclusive proof that the consents have been given by the Holders of the Bonds of a Series described in the certificate or certificates of the Trustee.

Any consent given by a Bondholder shall be binding upon the Bondholder giving such consent and, anything in the Resolution to the contrary notwithstanding, upon any subsequent Bondholder and of any Bonds of a Series issued in exchange therefor (whether or not such subsequent Holder thereof has notice thereof), unless such consent is revoked in writing by the Bondholder giving such consent or a subsequent Holder thereof by filing with the Trustee, prior to the time when the written statement of the Trustee provided for in the Resolution is filed, such revocation. The fact that a consent has not been revoked may likewise be proved by a certificate of the Trustee filed with the Trustee to the effect that no revocation thereof is on file with the Trustee. At any time after the Holders of the required percentages of Bonds of a Series shall have filed their consents to the Supplemental Resolution, the Trustee shall make and file with the Authority and the Trustee a written statement that such Holders of such required percentages of Bonds have filed such consents. Such written statement shall be conclusive that such consents have been so filed.

For the purposes of the Resolution, the purchasers of the Bonds of a Series, whether purchasing as underwriters or Remarketing Agent, for resale or otherwise, upon such purchase, may consent to a modification or amendment permitted by the Resolution in the manner provided in the Resolution, except that no proof of ownership shall be required, and with the same effect as a consent given by the Holder of such Bonds; **provided, however**, that, if such consent is given by a purchaser who is purchasing as an underwriter or for resale, the nature of the modification or amendment and the provisions for the purchaser consenting thereto shall be described in the official

statement, prospectus, offering memorandum or other offering document prepared in connection with the primary offering, reoffering or resale of the Bonds of such Series by the Authority.

(Section 10.02)

Modifications by Unanimous Consent

The terms and provisions of the Resolution and the rights and obligations of the Authority and of the Holders of the Bonds of a Series may be modified or amended in any respect upon the adoption and filing with the Trustee by the Authority of a copy of a Supplemental Resolution certified by an Authorized Officer of the Authority and the consent of the Holders of all of the Bonds of a Series then Outstanding, such consent to be given as provided in the Resolution, except that no notice to the Bondholders either by mailing or publication shall be required.

(Section 10.03)

Defaults and Remedies

Events of Default

An event of default shall exist under the Resolution and under a Series Resolution (referred to in the Resolution as an “event of default”) if:

(a) With respect to a Series of Bonds, payment of the principal Sinking Fund Installments or Redemption Price of any Bond shall not be made by the Authority when the same shall become due and payable, either at maturity or by proceedings for redemption or otherwise; or

(b) With respect to a Series of Bonds, payment of an installment of interest on any Bond shall not be made by the Authority when the same shall become due and payable; or

(c) With respect to a Series of Bonds, the Authority shall default in the due and punctual performance of any covenants contained in the Series Resolution authorizing the issuance thereof to the effect that the Authority shall comply with the provisions of the Code applicable to such Bonds necessary to maintain the exclusion of interest in the Resolution from gross income under Section 103 of the Code and shall not take any action which would adversely affect the exclusion of interest on such Bonds from gross income under Section 103 of the Code and, as a result thereof, the interest on the Bonds of such Series shall no longer be excludable from gross income under Section 103 of the Code; or

(d) With respect to a Series of Bonds, the Authority shall default in the due and punctual performance of any other of the covenants, conditions, agreements and provisions contained in the Resolution or in such Bonds or in the Series Resolution on the part of the Authority to be performed and such default shall continue for thirty (30) days after written notice specifying such default and requiring same to be remedied shall have been given to the Authority by the Trustee, which may give such notice in its discretion and shall give such notice at the written request of the Holders of not less than twenty-five per centum (25%) in principal amount of the Outstanding Bonds of such Series, or if such default is not capable of being cured within thirty (30) days, if the Authority fails to commence within said thirty (30) days and diligently prosecute the cure thereof; or

(e) With respect to a Series of Bonds, the Authority shall have notified the Trustee that an “Event of Default” as defined in the Loan Agreement shall have occurred and be continuing and all sums payable by the Institution under the Loan Agreement shall have been declared to be immediately due and payable, which declaration shall not have been annulled.

(Section 11.02)

Appendix D

Acceleration of Maturity

Upon the happening and continuance of any event of default specified in the Resolution, other than an event of default summarized in paragraph (c) above, then and in every such case the Trustee may, and, upon the written request of the Holders of not less than twenty-five per centum (25%) in principal amount of the Outstanding Bonds of a Series, shall, by a notice in writing to the Authority, declare the principal of and interest on all of the Outstanding Bonds of such Series to be immediately due and payable. At the expiration of thirty (30) days after notice of such declaration has been given, such principal and interest shall become and be immediately due and payable, anything in the Resolution or in a Series Resolution or in the Bonds of a Series to the contrary notwithstanding. At any time after the principal of such Bonds shall have been so declared to be due and payable, and before the entry of final judgment or decree in any suit, action or proceeding instituted on account of such default, or before the completion of the enforcement of any other remedy under the Resolution, the Trustee shall, with the written consent of the Holders of not less than twenty-five per centum (25%) in principal amount of the Bonds of such Series not then due by their terms and then Outstanding, by written notice to the Authority, annul such declaration and its consequences if: (i) money shall have accumulated in the Debt Service Fund sufficient to pay all arrears of interest, if any, upon all of the Outstanding Bonds of such Series (except the interest accrued on such Bonds since the last interest payment date); (ii) money shall have accumulated and be available sufficient to pay the charges, compensation, expenses, disbursements, advances and liabilities of the Trustee and any Paying Agent; (iii) all other amounts then payable by the Authority under the Resolution and under the Series Resolution (other than principal amounts payable only because of a declaration and acceleration under the Resolution) shall have been paid or a sum sufficient to pay the same shall have been deposited with the Trustee; and (iv) every other default known to the Trustee in the observance or performance of any covenant, condition or agreement contained in the Resolution or in the Series Resolution or in such Bonds (other than a default in the payment of the principal of such Bonds then due only because of a declaration under this Section of the Resolution) shall have been remedied to the reasonable satisfaction of the Trustee. No such annulment shall extend to or affect any subsequent default or impair any right consequent thereon.

(Section 11.03)

Enforcement of Remedies

Upon the happening and continuance of any Event of Default specified in the Resolution, then and in every such case, the Trustee may proceed, and upon the written request of the Holders of not less than twenty-five per centum (25%) in principal amount of the Outstanding Bonds of the Series affected by the Resolution, shall proceed (subject to the provisions of the Resolution relating to the compensation of the Trustee or any Paying Agent) to protect and enforce its rights and the rights of the Bondholders under the Resolution or under the applicable Series Resolution or under the laws of the State by such suits, actions or special proceedings in equity or at law, either for the specific performance of any covenant contained under the Resolution or under any Series Resolution or in aid or execution of any power in the Resolution or in the applicable Series Resolution granted, or for an accounting against the Authority as if the Authority were the trustee of an express trust, or for the enforcement of any proper legal or equitable remedy as the Trustee shall deem most effectual to protect and enforce such rights.

In the enforcement of any remedy under the Resolution and under a Series Resolution the Trustee shall be entitled to sue for, enforce payment of, and receive any and all amounts then, or during any default becoming, and at any time remaining, due from the Authority for principal or interest or otherwise under any of the provisions of the Resolution or of a Series Resolution or of the Bonds, with interest on overdue payments of the principal of or interest on the Bonds at the rate or rates of interest specified in such Bonds, together with any and all costs and expenses of collection and of all proceedings under the Resolution and under a Series Resolution and under such Bonds, without prejudice to any other right or remedy of the Trustee or of the Holders of such Bonds, and to recover and enforce judgment or decree against the Authority but solely as provided in the Resolution, in a Series Resolution and in such Bonds, for any portion of such amounts remaining unpaid, with interest, costs and expenses, and to collect in any manner provided by law, the money adjudged or decreed to be payable.

(Section 11.04)

Limitation of Rights of Individual Bondholders

No Holder of any of the Bonds of a Series shall have any right to institute any suit, action or proceeding in equity or at law for the execution of any trust under the Resolution, or for any other remedy under the Resolution unless such Holder previously shall have given to the Trustee written notice of the event of default on account of which such suit, action or proceeding is to be instituted, and unless also the Holders of not less than twenty-five per centum (25%) in principal amount of the Outstanding Bonds of a Series affected thereby, shall have made written request to the Trustee after the right to exercise such powers or right of action, as the case may be, shall have accrued, and shall have afforded the Trustee a reasonable opportunity either to proceed to exercise the powers granted by the Resolution or to institute such action, suit or proceeding in its or their name, and unless, also, there shall have been offered to the Trustee reasonable security and indemnity against the costs, expenses, and liabilities to be incurred therein or thereby, and the Trustee shall have refused or neglected to comply with such request within a reasonable time. Such notification, request and offer of indemnity are by the Resolution declared in every such case, at the option of the Trustee, to be conditions precedent to the execution of the powers and trusts of the Resolution or for any other remedy under the Resolution and in equity or at law. It is understood and intended that no one or more Holders of the Bonds of a Series secured by the Resolution and by a Series Resolution shall have any right in any manner whatever by his or their action to affect, disturb or prejudice the security of the Resolution or thereof or to enforce any right under the Resolution or thereunder except in the manner in the Resolution provided and in the Series Resolution, and that all proceedings at law or in equity shall be instituted and maintained for the benefit of all Holders of the Outstanding Bonds of such Series. Notwithstanding any other provision of the Resolution, the Holder of any Bond of a Series shall have the right which is absolute and unconditional to receive payment of the principal of (and premium, if any) and interest on such Bond on the stated maturity expressed in such Bond (or, in the case of redemption, on the redemption date) and to institute suit for the enforcement of any such payment, and such right shall not be impaired without the consent of such Holder.

(Section 11.08)

Defeasance

(a) If the Authority shall pay or cause to be paid to the Holders of Bonds of a Series the principal, Sinking Fund Installments, if any, or Redemption Price of and interest thereon, at the times and in the manner stipulated therein, in the Resolution, and in the applicable Series Resolution and Bond Series Certificate, then the pledge of the Revenues or other money and securities pledged to such Bonds and all other rights granted by the Resolution to such Bonds shall be discharged and satisfied. In such event, the Trustee shall, upon the request of the Authority, execute and deliver such documents to evidence such discharge and satisfaction as may be reasonably required by the Authority, and all money or other securities held by it pursuant to the Resolution and to the applicable Series Resolution which are not required for the payment or redemption of Bonds of such Series shall be paid or delivered by the Trustee as follows: first, to the Arbitrage Rebate Fund, the amount required to be deposited in the Resolution in accordance with the direction of an Authorized Officer of the Authority; second, to each applicable Provider the Provider Payments which have not been repaid, pro rata, based upon the respective Provider Payments then unpaid to each such Provider; third, to the Authority the amount certified by an Authorized Officer of the Authority to be then due or past due pursuant to the Loan Agreement for fees and expenses of the Authority or pursuant to any indemnity; and, then, the balance thereof to the Institution. Such securities so paid or delivered shall be released from any trust, pledge, lien, encumbrance or security interest created by the Resolution or by the Loan Agreement.

(b) Bonds for the payment or redemption of which money shall have been set aside and shall be held in trust by the Trustee (through deposit of money for such payment or redemption or otherwise) at the maturity or redemption date thereof shall be deemed to have been paid within the meaning and with the effect expressed in the Resolution. All Outstanding Bonds of any Series or any maturity within such Series or a portion of a maturity within a Series shall prior to the maturity or redemption date thereof be deemed to have been paid within the meaning and with the effect expressed in the preceding paragraph (a) above if (i) in case any of said Bonds are to be redeemed on any date prior to their maturity, the Authority shall have given to the Trustee, in form satisfactory to it, irrevocable instructions to give as provided in the Resolution notice of redemption on said date of such Bonds, (ii) there shall have been deposited with the Trustee either money in an amount which shall be sufficient, or Defeasance Securities the principal of and interest on which when due will provide money which, together with the money, if

Appendix D

any, deposited with the Trustee at the same time, shall be sufficient to pay when due the principal, Sinking Fund Installments, if any, or Redemption Price, if applicable, and interest due and to become due on said Bonds on and prior to the redemption date or maturity date thereof, as the case may be, (iii) the Trustee shall have received the written consent to such defeasance of each applicable Provider which has given written notice to the Trustee and the Authority that amounts advanced under the Credit Facility or Liquidity Facility issued by it or the interest thereon have not been repaid to such Provider, and (iv) in the event said Bonds are not by their terms subject to redemption within the next succeeding sixty (60) days, the Authority shall have given the Trustee, in form satisfactory to it, irrevocable instructions to give, as soon as practicable, by first class mail, postage prepaid, to the Holders of said Bonds at their last known addresses appearing on the registration books, and, if directed by the Authorized Officer of the Authority, by publication, at least twice, at an interval of not less than seven (7) days between publications, in an Authorized Newspaper, a notice to the Holders of such Bonds that the deposit required by clause (ii) above has been made with the Trustee and that said Bonds are deemed to have been paid in accordance with the Resolution and stating such maturity or redemption date upon which money is to be available for the payment of the principal, Sinking Fund Installments, if any, or Redemption Price, if applicable, of and interest on said Bonds. The Authority shall give written notice to the Trustee of its selection of the Series and maturity the payment of which is to be made in accordance with the Resolution. The Trustee shall select the Bonds of like Series, Sub-Series and maturity payment of which shall be made in accordance with the Resolution in the manner provided in the Resolution.

(Section 12.01)

**FORM OF APPROVING OPINION
OF BOND COUNSEL**

[THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK]

FORM OF APPROVING OPINION OF BOND COUNSEL

Squire, Sanders & Dempsey L.L.P.
30 Rockefeller Plaza
New York, New York 10112

_____, 2010

Dormitory Authority of the
State of New York
515 Broadway
Albany, New York 12207

Ladies and Gentlemen:

We have examined a record of proceedings relating to the issuance of \$27,795,000 aggregate principal amount of St. Joseph's College Revenue Bonds, Series 2010 (the "Series 2010 Bonds") by the Dormitory Authority of the State of New York (the "Authority"), a body corporate and politic constituting a public benefit corporation of the State of New York, created and existing under and pursuant to the Constitution and statutes of the State of New York, including the Dormitory Authority Act, being Title 4 of Article 8 of the Public Authorities Law of the State of New York, as amended to the date hereof (the "Act"). We have also examined such certificates, documents, records and matters of law as we have deemed necessary for the purpose of rendering the opinions hereinafter set forth.

The Series 2010 Bonds are issued under and pursuant to the Act, and the St. Joseph's College Revenue Bond Resolution and the Series 2010 Resolution Authorizing Up To \$35,000,000 St. Joseph's College Revenue Bonds, Series 2010, both adopted on June 23, 2010 (collectively, the "Resolution"). The Series 2010 Bonds are being issued for the purposes set forth in the Resolution. Capitalized terms used and not otherwise defined herein have the respective meanings given to them in the Resolution or the Loan Agreement (as defined herein).

The Series 2010 Bonds are dated their date of delivery and bear interest from such date payable on January 1, 2011 and semi-annually thereafter on July 1 and January 1 in each year until final maturity thereof. The Series 2010 Bonds mature on the date and in the years and amounts, and bear interest at the rates and are subject to redemption and purchase prior to maturity, all as set forth in the Bond Series Certificate executed in connection therewith.

The Authority and St. Joseph's College, New York (the "Institution") have entered into a Loan Agreement, dated as of June 23, 2010 (the "Loan Agreement"), providing, among other things, for a loan to the Institution for the purposes permitted thereby and by the Resolution. Pursuant to the Loan Agreement, the Institution is required to make payments sufficient to pay the principal and Sinking Fund Installments, if any, and the redemption and

Appendix E

purchase price of, and interest on the Series 2010 Bonds, which payments have been pledged by the Authority to the Trustee for the benefit of the Holders of the Series 2010 Bonds.

We are of the opinion that:

1. The Authority is a body corporate and politic constituting a public benefit corporation of the State of New York, with the right and lawful authority and power to adopt the Resolution and to issue the Series 2010 Bonds thereunder.

2. The Resolution has been duly and lawfully adopted by the Authority. The Resolution is in full force and effect, and is a legal, valid and binding obligation of the Authority enforceable in accordance with its terms.

3. The Series 2010 Bonds have been duly and validly authorized and issued in accordance with the Constitution and statutes of the State of New York, including the Act, and in accordance with the Resolution. The Series 2010 Bonds are legal, valid and binding special obligations of the Authority payable as provided in the Resolution, are enforceable in accordance with their terms and the terms of the Resolution and are entitled to the equal benefits of the Resolution and the Act.

4. The Authority has the right and lawful authority and power to enter into the Loan Agreement and the Loan Agreement has been duly authorized, executed and delivered by the Authority and constitutes the legal, valid and binding obligation of the Authority enforceable in accordance with its terms.

5. Assuming compliance by the Authority and the Institution with the covenants described below, interest on the Series 2010 Bonds is excluded from gross income for federal income tax purposes. The interest on the Series 2010 Bonds will not be treated as a specific preference item for purposes of computing the federal alternative minimum tax. However, we note a portion of the interest on Series 2010 Bonds earned by certain corporations may be subject to the federal alternative minimum tax, which is based in part on adjusted current earnings.

We are further of the opinion that the difference between the principal amount of the Series 2010 Bonds maturing on July 1, 2013, July 1, 2014, July 1, 2017, July 1, 2019 and July 1, 2020 (“Discount Bonds”) and the initial offering price to the public (excluding bond houses, brokers or similar persons acting in the capacity of underwriters or wholesalers) at which a substantial amount of such Discount Bonds of the same maturity was sold constitutes original issue discount (“OID”). For federal income tax purposes, OID accrues to the owner of a Discount Bond over the period to maturity based on the constant yield method, compounded semiannually (or over a shorter permitted compounding interval selected by the owner). The portion of OID that accrues during the period of ownership of a Discount Bond (i) is interest excluded from the owner’s gross income for federal income tax purposes to the same extent and subject to the same considerations discussed above, as other interest on the Series 2010 Bonds, and (ii) is added to the owner’s tax basis for purposes of determining gain or loss on the maturity, redemption, prior sale or other disposition of that Discount Bond. A purchaser of a Discount Bond at its issue price in the initial public offering who holds that Discount Bond to maturity will realize no gain or loss upon the retirement of that Discount Bond. Initial purchasers of the Series 2010 Bonds maturing on July 1, 2011, July 1, 2025 and July 1, 2035, whose initial adjusted basis in such Bonds exceeds the respective principal amount of such Bonds (“Premium Bonds”) will have bond premium to the extent of that excess. For federal income tax purposes, bond premium is amortized over the period to maturity of a Premium Bond, based on the yield to maturity of that Premium Bond (or, in the case of a Premium Bond callable prior to its stated maturity, the amortization period and yield must be determined on the basis of an earlier call date that results in the lowest yield on that Premium Bond), compounded semiannually. No portion of that bond premium is deductible by the owner of a Premium Bond. For purposes of determining the owner’s gain or loss on the sale, redemption (including redemption at maturity) or other disposition of a Premium Bond, the owner’s tax basis in the Premium Bond is reduced by the amount of bond premium that accrues during the period of ownership.

6. We are also of the opinion that interest on the Series 2010 Bonds is exempt, under existing law, from personal income taxes of the State of New York and its political subdivisions, including The City of New York and the City of Yonkers.

With respect to the opinions in paragraphs 5 and 6, the Internal Revenue Code of 1986 (the “Code”) imposes certain requirements that must be met subsequent to the issuance and delivery of the Series 2010 Bonds for interest thereon to be and remain excluded from gross income for federal income tax purposes. Noncompliance with such requirements could cause the interest on the Series 2010 Bonds to be included in gross income retroactively to the date of issue of the Series 2010 Bonds. The Authority and the Institution have covenanted to take all actions necessary to maintain, and to avoid taking any actions that would impair, the exclusion of the interest on the Series 2010 Bonds from gross income for federal income tax purposes pursuant to Section 103(a) of the Code.

In rendering the opinion set forth in paragraphs 5 and 6, we have relied upon representations made by the Institution with respect to certain material facts within their knowledge and also upon the opinion of Kelley Drye & Warren LLP, counsel to the Institution, and we have made no independent investigation thereof regarding, among other matters, the current qualification of the Institution as an organization described in Section 501(c)(3), and exempt from federal income tax pursuant to Section 501(a) of the Code. We note that such opinion is subject to a number of qualifications and limitations. Failure of the Institution to be organized and operated in accordance with the Internal Revenue Service’s requirements for maintenance of its status as an organization described in Section 501(c)(3), and exempt from federal income tax pursuant to Section 501(a), of the Code may result in interest on the Series 2010 Bonds being included in gross income for federal income tax purposes, possibly retroactively from the original delivery of the Series 2010 Bonds.

We have examined an executed Series 2010 Bond and, in our opinion, the form of said bond and its execution are regular and proper.

Except as stated in paragraphs 5 and 6 above, we express no opinion as to any other federal or state tax consequences of the ownership or disposition of the Series 2010 Bonds. Furthermore, we express no opinion as to any federal, state or local tax law consequences with respect to the Series 2010 Bonds, or the interest thereon, if any action is taken with respect to the Series 2010 Bonds or the proceeds thereof upon the advice or approval of other bond counsel.

The opinions contained in paragraphs 2, 3 and 4 above are qualified to the extent that the enforceability of the Resolution, the Series 2010 Bonds and the Loan Agreement may be limited by bankruptcy, insolvency, moratorium, reorganization or other laws affecting creditors’ rights generally or as to the availability of any particular remedy.

In connection with the delivery of this opinion, we are not passing upon the authorization, execution and delivery of the Loan Agreement by the Institution. We have assumed the due authorization, execution and delivery of the Loan Agreement by the Institution.

We express no opinion in this letter as to the accuracy, completeness, fairness or sufficiency of the Official Statement, or any appendices thereto.

Very truly yours,

[THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK]



Printed by: ImageMaster, Inc.